LEXMARK™

X790 Series

User's Guide

August 2010 **www.lexmark.com**

Machine type(s):

7562, 4917

Model(s):

432, 436, dn1, dn2, gd1, gd2, dt1, dt2, gt1, gt2, df1, df2, gf1, gf2, d01, d02, g01, g02, t01, t02, g91, g92, f01, f02, g81, g82

Contents

Safety information.....7

Learning about the printer.....9

Thank you for choosing this printer!.....9
Finding information about the printer.....9
Printer configurations.....10
Basic functions of the scanner.....11
Understanding the ADF and scanner glass.....12
Using the security lock feature.....13
Understanding the printer control panel.....14
Understanding the home screen.....15
Using the touch-screen buttons.....16

Additional printer setup.....19

Installing internal options.....19
Order of installation.....37
Installing optional trays.....37
Attaching cables.....38
Verifying printer setup.....39
Setting up the printer software.....40
Setting up wireless printing.....41
Installing the printer on a wired network.....47
Changing port settings after installing a new network Internal Solutions Port.....49
Setting up serial printing.....50

Setting up and using the home screen applications.....52

Making the home screen applications work for you.....52
Configuring Forms and Favorites.....52
Configuring Scan to Network.....54
Exporting and importing a configuration using the Embedded Web Server.....55

Minimizing your printer's environmental impact.....56

Saving paper and toner.....56
Saving energy.....57
Recycling.....60

Loading paper and specialty media....62

Setting the paper size and type....62
Configuring Universal paper settings....62
Loading the standard or optional 550-sheet tray....63
Loading the 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder....66
Loading the multipurpose feeder....68
Linking and unlinking trays....71

Paper and specialty media guidelines....73

Paper guidelines....73
Supported paper sizes, types, and weights....76

Printing....79

Printing a document....79
Printing on specialty media....79
Printing confidential and other held jobs....82
Supported flash drives and file types....83
Printing from a flash drive....84
Printing information pages....85
Printing in black and white....86
Adjusting toner darkness....86
Supported finishing features....86
Canceling a print job....88

Copying....90

Making copies....90
Copying film photos....91
Copying on specialty media....91
Customizing copy settings....92
Placing information on copies....97
Canceling a copy job....97
Understanding the copy screens and options....98

E-mailing....101

Getting ready to e-mail....101
Creating an e-mail shortcut....102
E-mailing a document....103

Customizing e-mail settings....104
Canceling an e-mail....105
Understanding e-mail options....105

Faxing....108

Getting the printer ready to fax....108
Sending a fax....114
Creating shortcuts....115
Using shortcuts and the address book....116
Customizing fax settings....116
Canceling an outgoing fax....118
Understanding fax options....118
Holding and forwarding faxes....120

Scanning to an FTP address....122

Scanning to an FTP address....122
Creating shortcuts....123
Understanding FTP options....124

Scanning to a computer or flash drive....127

Scanning to a computer....127
Scanning to a flash drive....128
Understanding the Scan Center features....128
Using the ScanBack Utility....128
Understanding scan profile options....129

Understanding printer menus....131

Menus list....131
Supplies menu....132
Paper menu....134
Reports menu....146
Network/Ports menu....147
Security menu....160
Settings menu....165
Help menu....217

Securing the printer hard disk and other installed memory....218

Statement of Volatility....218
Erasing volatile memory....219
Erasing non-volatile memory....219
Erasing printer hard disk memory....219
Configuring printer hard disk encryption....221

Maintaining the printer....222

Cleaning the exterior of the printer....222
Cleaning the scanner glass....223
Cleaning the ADF parts....224
Cleaning the printhead lenses....226
Adjusting scanner registration....227
Storing supplies....228
Checking the status of supplies....228
Ordering supplies....229
Replacing supplies....231
Moving the printer....235

Administrative support....237

Finding advanced networking and administrator information....237
Using the Embedded Web Server....237
Checking the status of the printer....237
Checking the virtual display....238
Setting up e-mail alerts....238
Viewing reports....238
Restoring factory default settings....239

Clearing jams....240

Avoiding jams....240
Understanding jam numbers and locations....240
200 paper jam....242
201 paper jam....242
202–203 paper jams....243
230 paper jam....244

231–239 paper jams....245
24x paper jam....245
250 paper jam....246
280–289 paper jams....247
290–292 paper jams....248
400–403 and 460–461 paper jams....248
431–438 paper jams....249
455 staple jam....249

Troubleshooting....252

The indicator light is blinking....252
Understanding printer messages....252
Solving basic printer problems....270
Solving printing problems....270
Solving copy problems....273
Solving scanner problems....276
Solving fax problems....278
Solving home screen applications problems....281
Solving option problems....284
Solving paper feed problems....287
Solving print quality problems....288
Solving color quality problems....301
Embedded Web Server does not open....304
Contacting customer support....305

Notices....306

Product information....306
Edition notice....306
Power consumption....310

Index....325

Safety information

Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

Do not place or use this product near water or wet locations.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: This product uses a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

This product uses a printing process that heats the print media, and the heat may cause the media to release emissions. You must understand the section in your operating instructions that discusses the guidelines for selecting print media to avoid the possibility of harmful emissions.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: The lithium battery in this product is not intended to be replaced. There is a danger of explosion if a lithium battery is incorrectly replaced. Do not recharge, disassemble, or incinerate a lithium battery. Discard used lithium batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: Before moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Turn the printer off using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer before moving it.
- Lift the printer off the optional drawer, and set it aside instead of trying to lift the drawer and printer at the same time.

  Note: Use the handholds located on both sides of the printer to lift it off the optional drawer.

Use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: To reduce risk of fire, use only the telecommunications (RJ-11) cord provided with this product or a UL Listed 26 AWG or larger replacement when connecting this product to the public switched telephone network.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Do not use the telephone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: Make sure that all external connections (such as Ethernet and telephone system connections) are properly installed in their marked plug-in ports.

This product is designed, tested, and approved to meet strict global safety standards with the use of specific manufacturer's components. The safety features of some parts may not always be obvious. The manufacturer is not responsible for the use of other replacement parts.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: Do not cut, twist, bind, crush, or place heavy objects on the power cord. Do not subject the power cord to abrasion or stress. Do not pinch the power cord between objects such as furniture and walls. If any of these things happen, a risk of fire or electrical shock results. Inspect the power cord regularly for signs of such problems. Remove the power cord from the electrical outlet before inspecting it.

Refer service or repairs, other than those described in the user documentation, to a professional service person.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: To avoid the risk of electric shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD: Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see **www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters**.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each paper drawer or tray separately. Keep all other drawers or trays closed until needed.

SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.

Learning about the printer

Thank you for choosing this printer!

We've worked hard to make sure it will meet your needs.

To start using your new printer right away, use the setup materials that came with the printer, and then skim the *User's Guide* to learn how to perform basic tasks. To get the most out of your printer, read the *User's Guide* carefully, and make sure you check the latest updates on our Web site.

We're committed to delivering performance and value with our printers, and we want to make sure you're satisfied. If you do encounter any problems along the way, one of our knowledgeable support representatives will be delighted to help you get back on track fast. And if you find something we could do better, please let us know. After all, you are the reason we do what we do, and your suggestions help us do it better.

Finding information about the printer

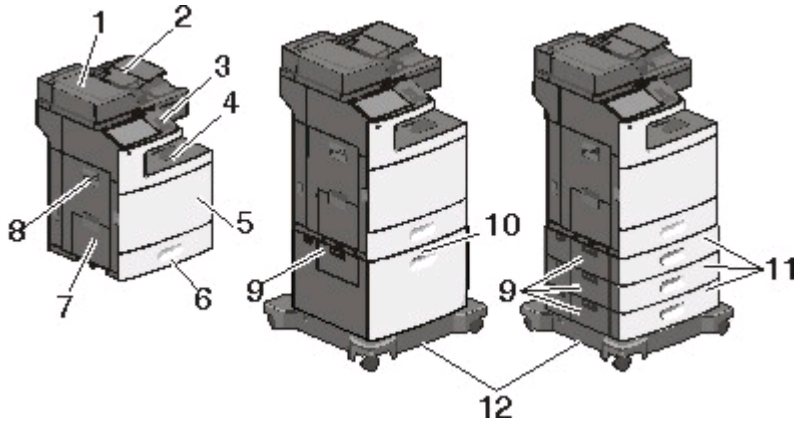
What are you looking for?	Find it here
Initial setup instructions: • Connecting the printer • Installing the printer software	Setup documentation—The setup documentation came with the printer and is also available on the Lexmark Web site at **http://support.lexmark.com**.
Additional setup and instructions for using the printer: • Selecting and storing paper and specialty media • Loading paper • Configuring printer settings • Viewing and printing documents and photos • Setting up and using the printer software • Configuring the printer on a network (depending on your printer model) • Caring for and maintaining the printer • Troubleshooting and solving problems	*User's Guide*—The *User's Guide* is available on the *Software and Documentation* CD. For updates, check our Web site at **http://support.lexmark.com**.
Instructions for: • Installing the printer using Guided or Advanced wireless setup • Connecting the printer to an Ethernet or a wireless network • Troubleshooting printer connection problems	*Networking Guide*— Open the *Software and Documentation* CD, and then look for *Printer and Software Documentation* under the Pubs folder. From the list of publications, click the **Networking Guide** link.

What are you looking for?	Find it here
Help using the printer software	Windows or Mac Help—Open a printer software program or application, and then click **Help**. Click ? to view context-sensitive information. **Notes:** • The Help installs automatically with the printer software. • The printer software is located in the printer Program folder or on the desktop, depending on your operating system.
Latest supplemental information, updates, and technical support: • Documentation • Driver downloads • Live chat support • E-mail support • Telephone support	Lexmark Support Web site—**http://support.lexmark.com** **Note:** Select your country or region, and then select your product to view the appropriate support site. Support telephone numbers and hours of operation for your country or region can be found on the Support Web site or on the printed warranty that came with your printer. Record the following information (located on the store receipt and at the back of the printer), and have it ready when you contact support so they may serve you faster: • Machine Type number • Serial number • Date purchased • Store where purchased
Warranty information	Warranty information varies by country or region: • **In the US**—See the Statement of Limited Warranty included with this printer, or at **http://support.lexmark.com**. • **In other countries and regions**—See the printed warranty that came with your printer.

Printer configurations

CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD: Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see **www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters**.

You can configure your basic printer by adding optional trays.



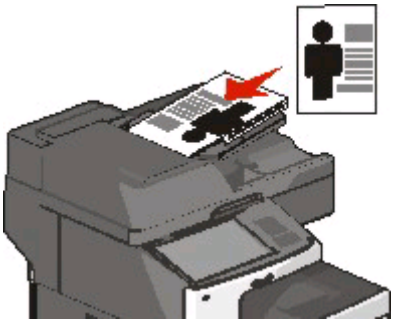
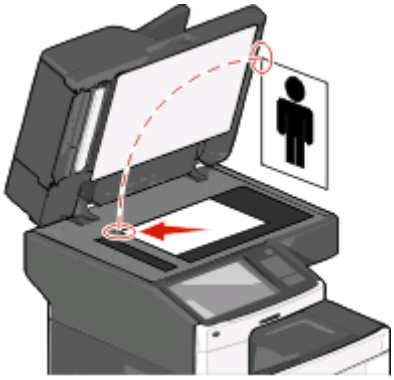
1	Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)
2	ADF input tray
3	Printer control panel
4	Standard exit bin
5	Front door
6	Standard 550-sheet trays (Tray 1)
7	Multipurpose feeder
8	Side door
9	Jam access doors
10	Optional 2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder
11	Optional 550-sheet trays
12	Caster base

Basic functions of the scanner

The scanner provides copy, fax, and scan-to-network capability for large workgroups. You can:

- Make quick copies, or change the settings on the printer control panel to perform specific copy jobs.
- Send a fax using the printer control panel.
- Send a fax to multiple fax destinations at the same time.
- Scan documents and send them to your computer, an e-mail address, a flash drive, or an FTP destination.
- Scan documents and send them to another printer (PDF by way of FTP).

Understanding the ADF and scanner glass

Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	Scanner glass
 Use the ADF for multiple pages, including duplex pages.	 Use the scanner glass for single pages or book pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings or lightweight carbonless forms).

Using the ADF

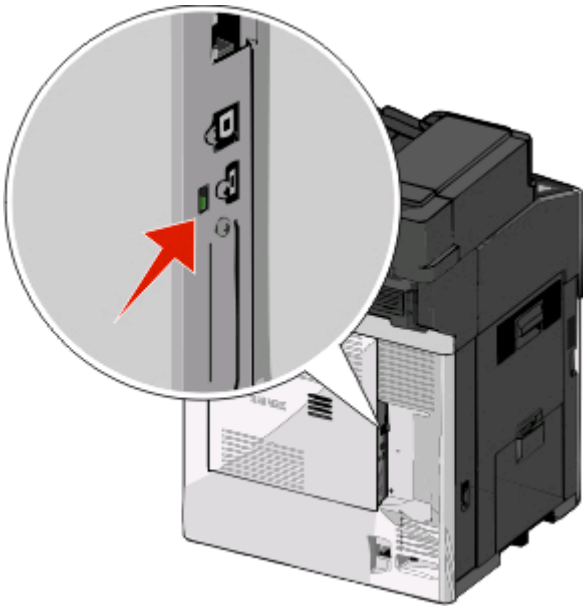
- Load the document into the ADF faceup, short edge first.
- Load up to 75 sheets of plain paper in the ADF input tray.
- Scan sizes from 76 x 139 mm (3.0 x 5.5 in.) to 215 x 355 mm (8.5 x 14 in.).
- Scan documents with mixed page sizes (letter and legal).
- Scan media weights from 52 to 120 g/m^2 (14 to 32 lb).
- Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

Using the scanner glass

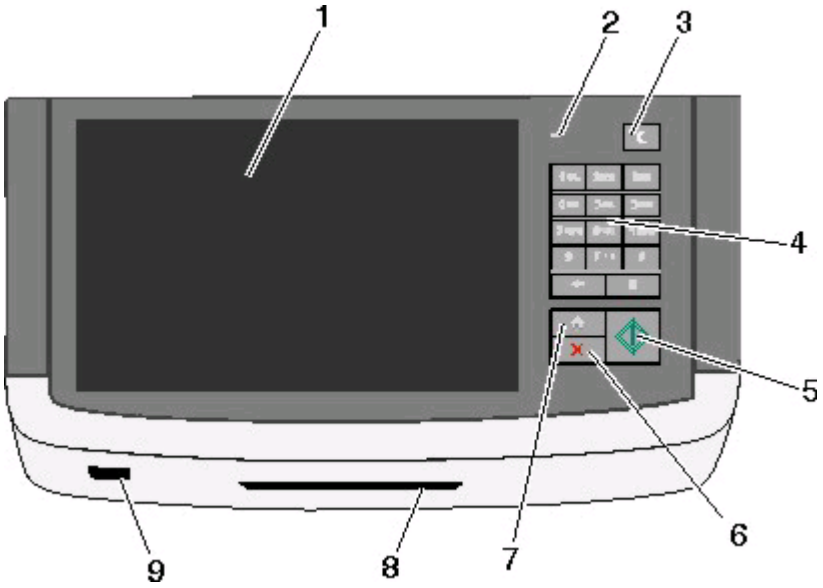
- Place a document facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.
- Scan or copy documents up to 215 x 355 mm (8.5 x 14 in.).
- Copy books up to 25 mm (1 in.) thick.

Using the security lock feature

The printer is equipped with a security lock feature. When a lock compatible with most laptop computers is attached, the printer is locked. Once locked, the metal plate and the system board cannot be removed. Attach a security lock to the printer in the location shown.



Understanding the printer control panel

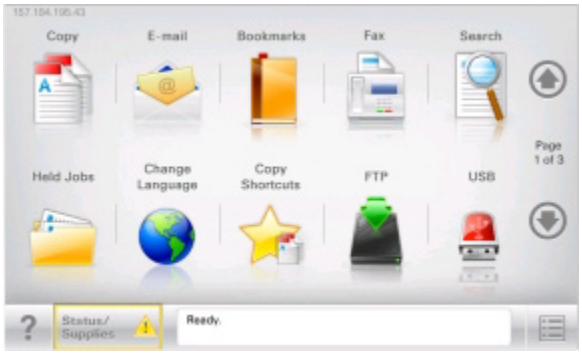


Item		Description
1	Display	Lets you view scanning, copying, faxing, and printing options as well as status and error messages
2	Indicator light	• **Off**—The power is off. • **Blinking green**—The printer is warming up, processing data, or printing. • **Solid green**—The printer is on, but idle. • **Blinking red**—Operator intervention is needed.
3	Sleep	Activates Sleep Mode or Hibernate Mode The following are the statuses of the indicator light and the Sleep button: • Entering or waking from Sleep Mode—The indicator light is illuminated solid green, Sleep button is unilluminated. • Operating in Sleep Mode—The indicator light is illuminated solid green, Sleep button is illuminated solid amber. • Entering or waking from Hibernate Mode—The indicator light is illuminated solid green, Sleep button is illuminated blinking amber. • Operating in Hibernate Mode—The indicator light is unilluminated, Sleep button is blinking amber in pulsing pattern.
4	Keypad	Lets you enter numbers, letters, or symbols on the display
5	Submit	Lets you submit changes made in the printer settings
6	Stop/Cancel	Stops all printer activity **Note:** A list of option is displayed once **Stopped** appears on the display.
7	Home	Lets you navigate back to the home screen
8	Card reader	Limits the use of certain printer functions to authenticated users **Note:** The card reader may not be available on all printer models.
9	USB port	Lets you insert a USB flash drive to send data or to save scanned images

Understanding the home screen

When the printer is turned on, the display shows a basic screen, referred to as the home screen. Touch the home screen buttons to initiate an action such as copying, faxing, or scanning; to open the menu screen; or to respond to messages.

Note: Buttons appearing on the home screen may vary depending on home screen customization settings.



Display item	Description
Copy	Opens the Copy menus
E-mail	Opens the E-mail menus
Fax	Opens the Fax menus
	Opens the printer menus. These menus are available only when the printer is in the **Ready** state.
FTP	Opens the File Transfer Protocol (FTP) menus
Status message bar	• Shows the current printer status such as **Ready** or **Busy**. • Shows printer conditions such as **Toner Low**. • Shows intervention messages so the printer can continue processing.
Status/Supplies	Displays a warning or error message whenever the printer requires intervention to continue processing. Touch this button to access the messages screen for more information on the message.
USB	Displays the files on a USB drive
Bookmarks	Lets you create, organize, and save a set of bookmarks (URL) into a tree view of folders and file links.
Held Jobs	Displays all current held jobs

Other buttons that may appear on the home screen:

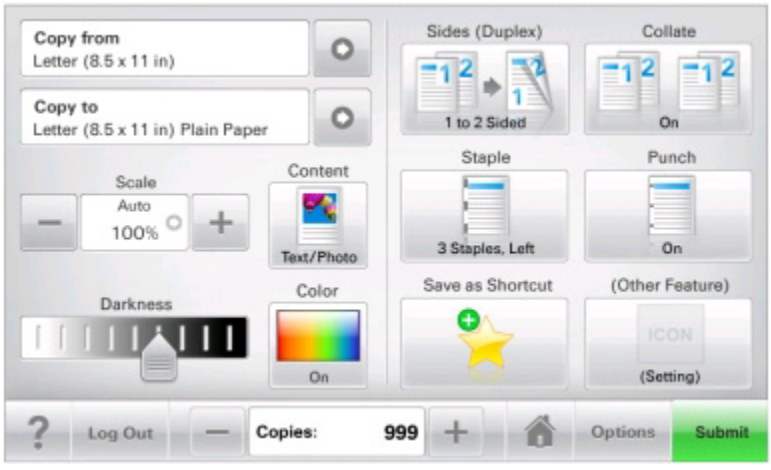
Display item	Function
Release Held Fax	If this button is shown, then there are held faxes with a scheduled hold time previously set. To access the list of held faxes, touch this button.
Lock Device	This button appears on the screen when the printer is unlocked and password has been set. Touching this button opens a password entry screen. Enter the correct password to lock the printer control panel.

Display item	Function
Unlock Device	This button appears on the screen when the printer is locked. The printer control panel buttons and shortcuts cannot be used while this appears. Touching this button opens a password entry screen. Enter the correct password to unlock the printer control panel.
Cancel Jobs	Opens the Cancel Jobs screen. The Cancel Jobs screen shows three headings: Print, Fax, and Network. The following items are available under the Print, Fax, and Network headings: • Print job • Copy job • Fax profile • FTP • E-mail send Each heading has a list of jobs shown in a column under it which can show only three jobs per screen. If more than three jobs exist in a column, then an arrow appears enabling you to scroll through the jobs.
Change Language	Launches the Change Language pop-up window that allows you to change the primary language of the printer.

Using the touch-screen buttons

Note: Your screens and buttons may vary depending on your options and administrative setup.

Sample touch screen



Button	Function
Submit	Submits changes made in the printer settings
Sample Copy	Prints a sample copy

Button	Function
Right arrow	Scrolls to the right
Left arrow	Scrolls to the left
Home	Returns to the home screen
Right increase	Lets you select a higher value
Left decrease	Lets you select a lower value
Exit	Lets you exit from the current screen
Tips	Opens a context-sensitive Help dialog on the touch screen

Other touch-screen buttons

Button	Function
Accept	Saves a setting
Cancel	• Cancels an action or a selection • Exits a screen and lets you return to the previous screen without saving changes

Button	Function
Reset	Resets values on the screen
Unselected radio button	Indicates that an item is not selected
Selected radio button	Indicates a selection
Search	Lets you search current held jobs
Warning	Indicates a warning or error condition

Features

Feature	Description
Menu trail line: Menus > Settings > Copy Settings > Number of Copies	A Menu trail line is located at the top of each menu screen. This feature shows the path taken to arrive at the current menu. Touch any of the underlined words to return to that menu or menu item. The Number of Copies is not underlined since this is the current screen. If you touch an underlined word on the Number of Copies screen before the Number of Copies is set and saved, then the selection is not saved, and it does not become the default setting.
Attendance message alert	If an attendance message affects a function, this icon appears and the red indicator light blinks.

Additional printer setup

Installing internal options

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

You can customize your printer connectivity and memory capacity by adding optional cards. The instructions in this section explain how to install the available cards; you can also use them to locate a card for removal.

Available internal options

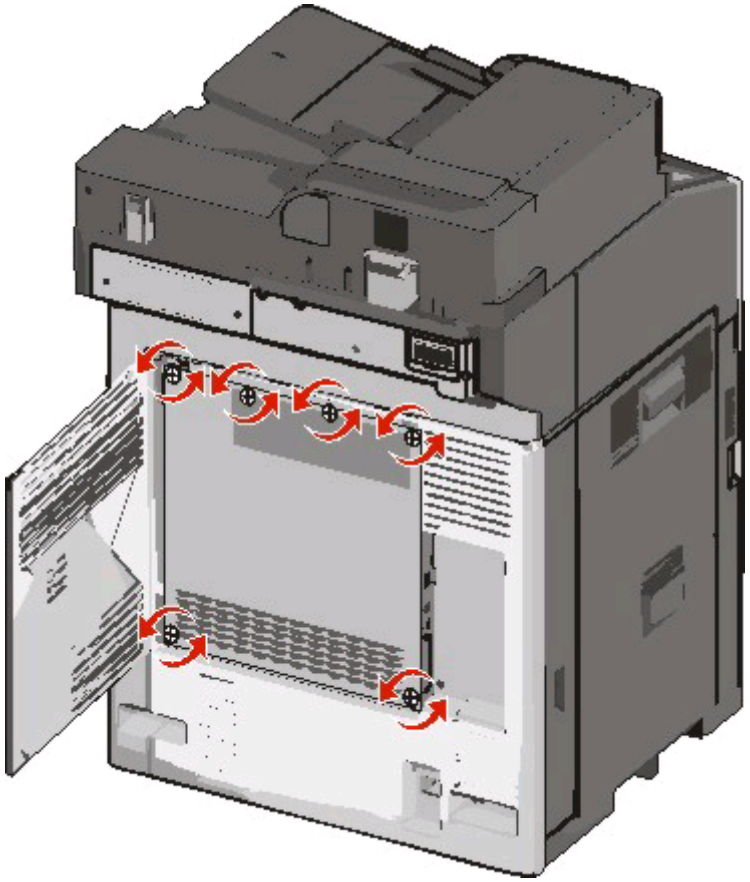
- Memory cards
  - Printer memory
  - Flash memory
  - Fonts
- Firmware cards
  - Bar Code
  - PrintCryption™
- Lexmark™ Internal Solutions Ports (ISP)
  - RS-232-C Serial ISP
  - Parallel 1284-B ISP
  - MarkNet™ N8250 802.11 b/g/n Wireless ISP
  - MarkNet N8130 10/100 Fiber ISP
  - MarkNet N8120 10/100/1000 Ethernet ISP

Accessing the system board

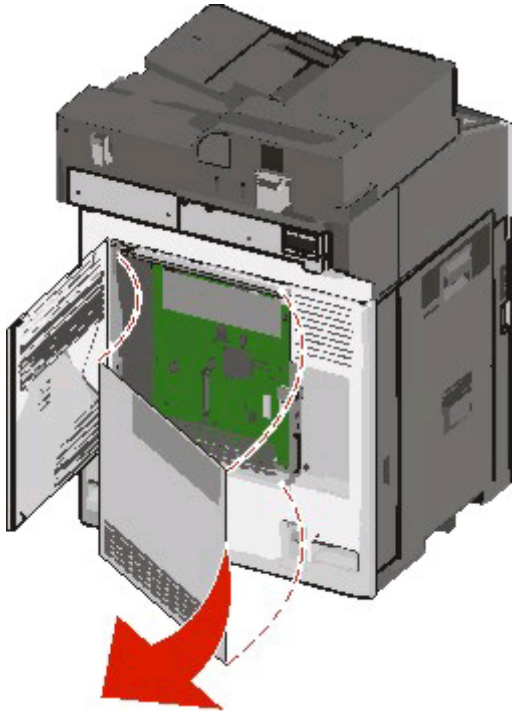
CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

1. Open the cover.
2. Remove the metal panel.
   a. Turn the screws on the panel counterclockwise to remove them.

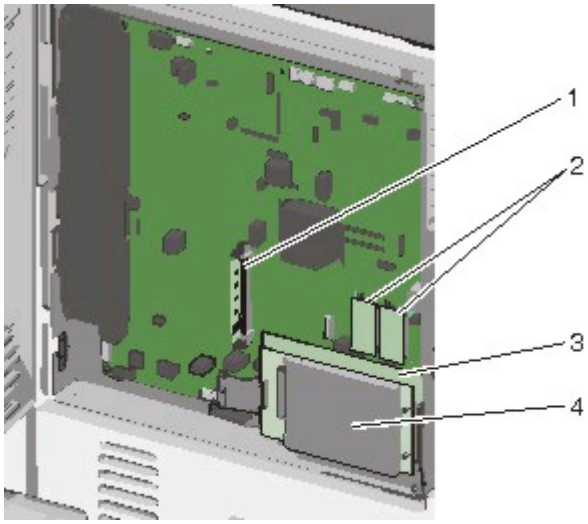


b Shift the metal panel to the left to disengage the hooks, then pull forward to remove it.



3 Use the following illustration to locate the appropriate connectors.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

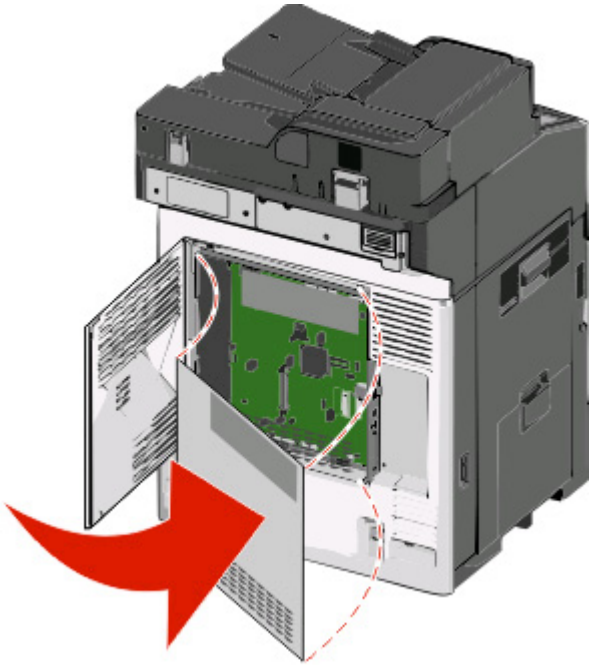


1	Memory card connector
2	Firmware and flash memory card connectors
3	Internal print server connector
4	Hard disk connector

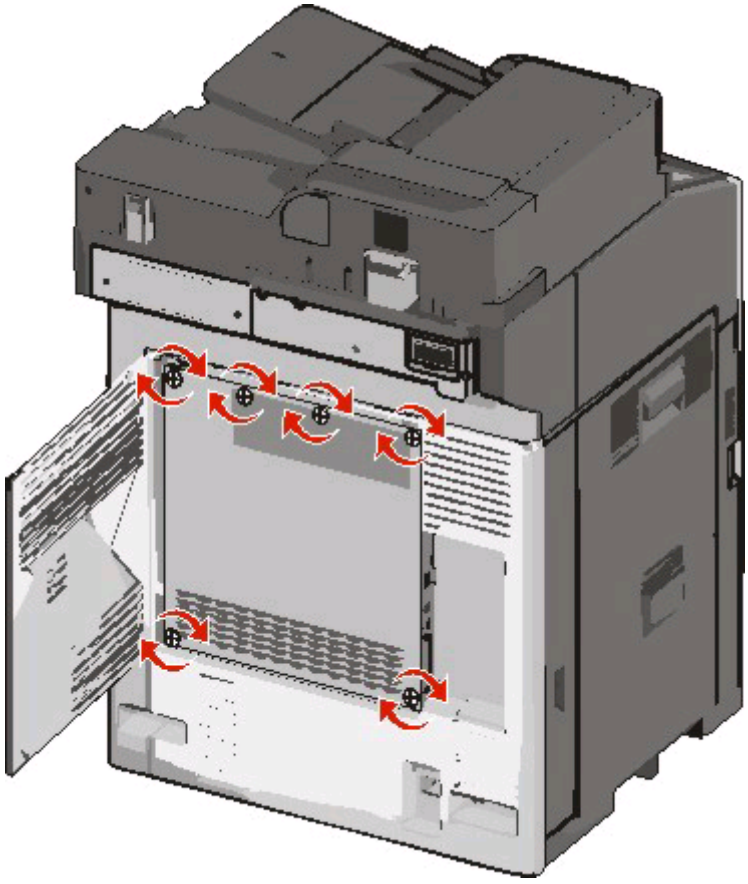
4 Reattach the system board cover.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

a Reinstall the hooks on the left side of the metal panel into the slots on the system board cage, and then shift to the right.



b Align and then turn each screw clockwise to tighten.



c Close the cover.

Installing a memory card

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

An optional memory card can be purchased separately and attached to the system board.

1 Access the system board.

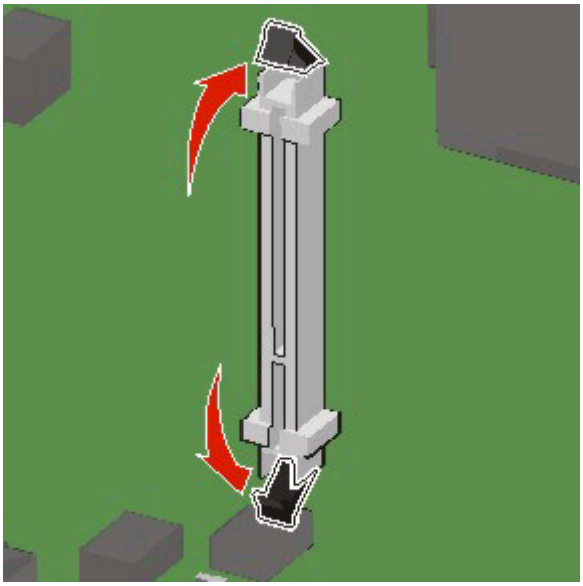
For more information, see "Accessing the system board" on page 20.

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

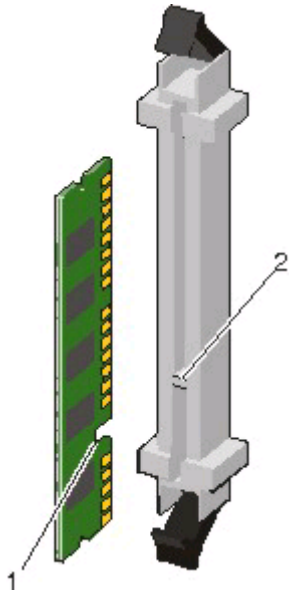
2 Unpack the memory card.

Note: Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the card.

3 On the system board, open the memory card connector latches.

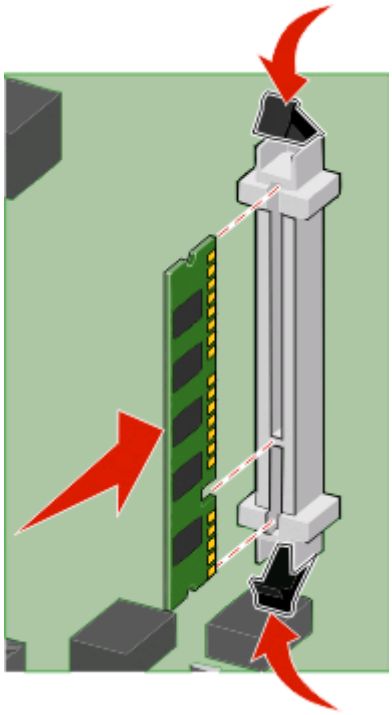


4 Align the notches on the memory card to the ridges on the connector.



1	Notch
2	Ridge

5 Push the memory card straight into the connector until it *clicks* into place.



6 Reattach the system board cover.

Installing a flash memory or firmware card

The system board has two connections for an optional flash memory or firmware card. Only one of each may be installed, but the connectors are interchangeable.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

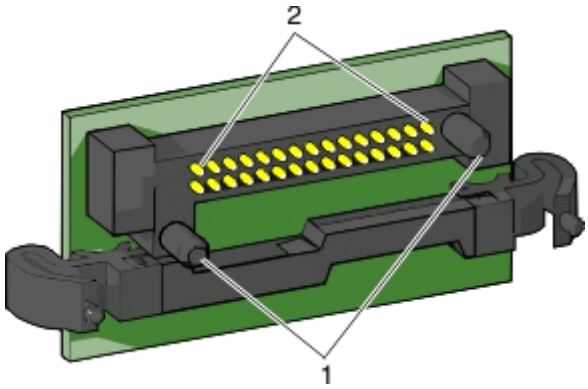
1 Access the system board.

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

2 Unpack the card.

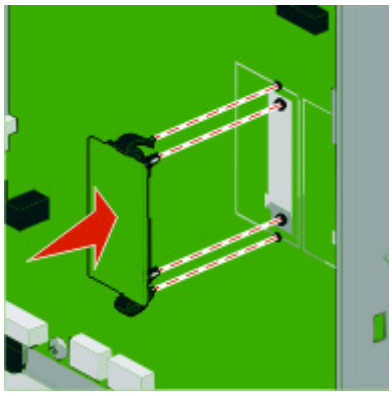
Note: Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the card.

3 Holding the card by its sides, align the plastic pins on the card with the holes on the system board.



1	Plastic pins
2	Metal pins

4 Push the card firmly into place.



Notes:

- The entire length of the connector on the card must touch and be flush against the system board.
- Be careful not to damage the connectors.

5 Reattach the system board cover.

Installing an Internal Solutions Port

The system board supports one optional Lexmark Internal Solutions Port (ISP).

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

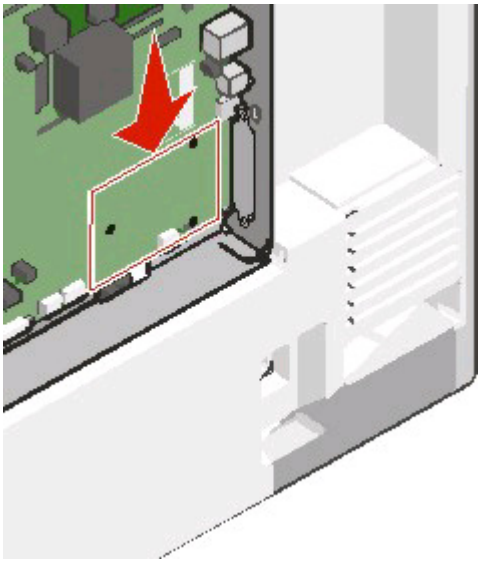
1. Access the system board.

   For more information, see "Accessing the system board" on page 20.

2. Unpack the ISP and plastic tee.

   Note: Avoid touching the components on the card.

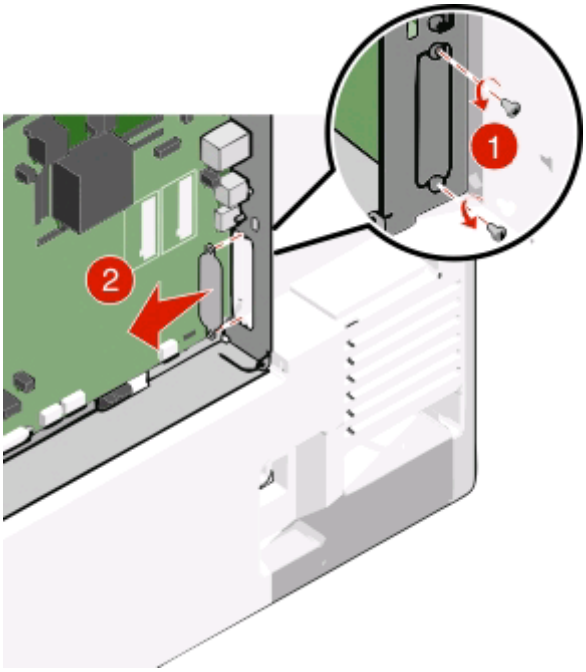
3. Locate the appropriate connector on the system board.



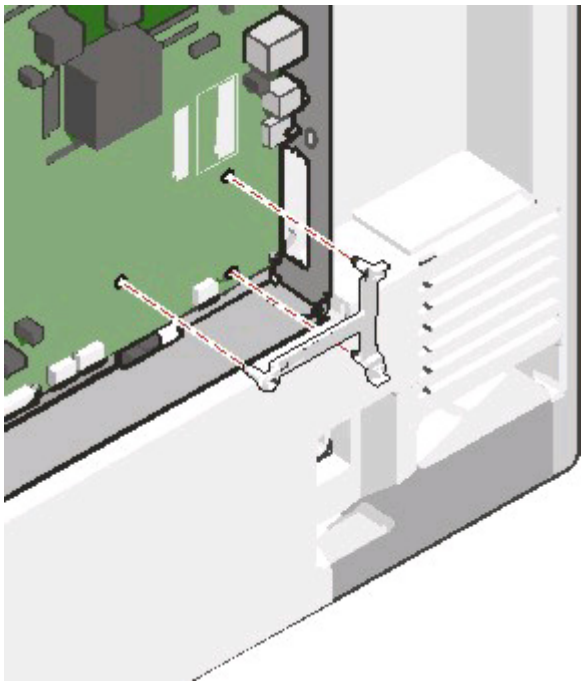
4. Remove the printer hard disk.

   For more information, see "Removing a printer hard disk" on page 36.

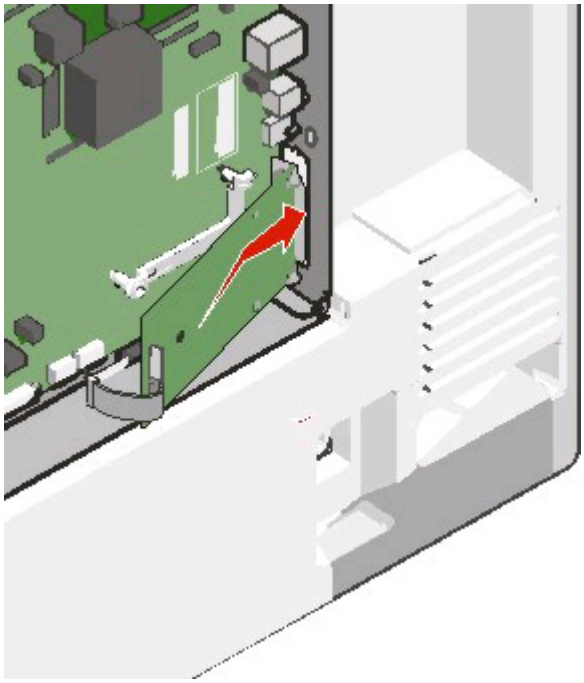
5 Remove the metal cover from the ISP opening.



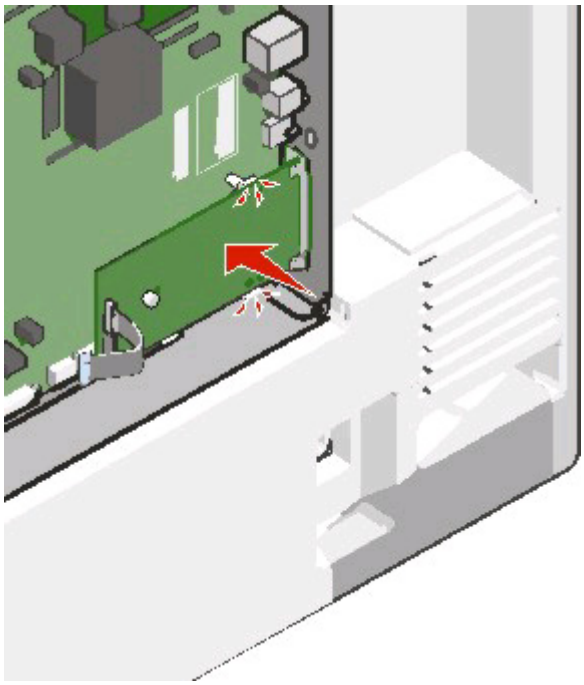
6 Align the posts of the plastic tee to the holes on the system board, and press down until the tee *clicks* into place. Be sure each post of the tee has latched completely, and the tee is seated firmly on the system board.



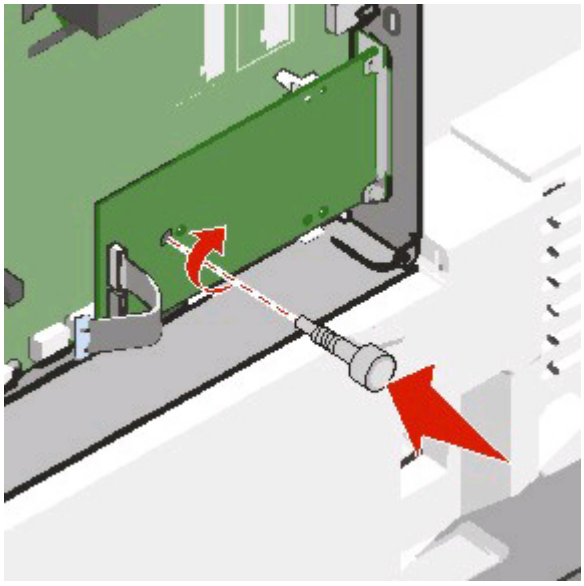
7 Install the ISP on the plastic tee. Angle the ISP over the plastic tee, and then slant it toward the plastic tee so that any overhanging connectors will pass through the ISP opening in the system board cage.



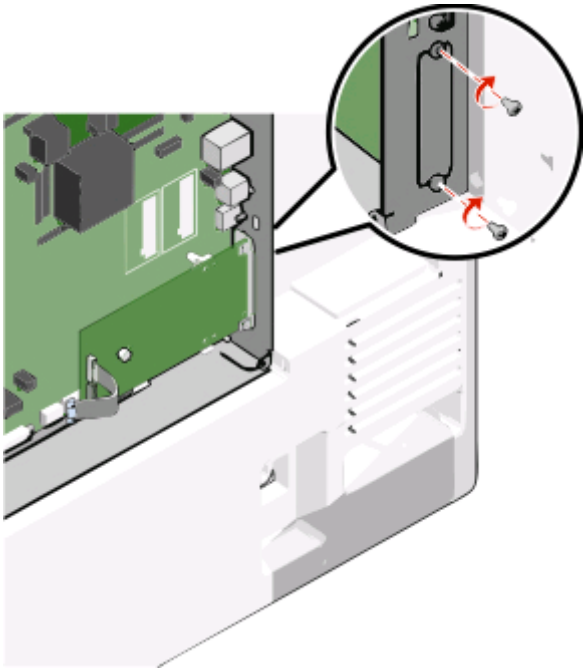
8 Lower the ISP toward the plastic tee until the ISP is seated between the guides of the plastic tee.



9 Insert the long thumbscrew and turn it clockwise, enough to hold the ISP in place, but do not yet tighten the thumbscrew.



10 Attach the two provided screws to secure the ISP mounting bracket to the system board cage.

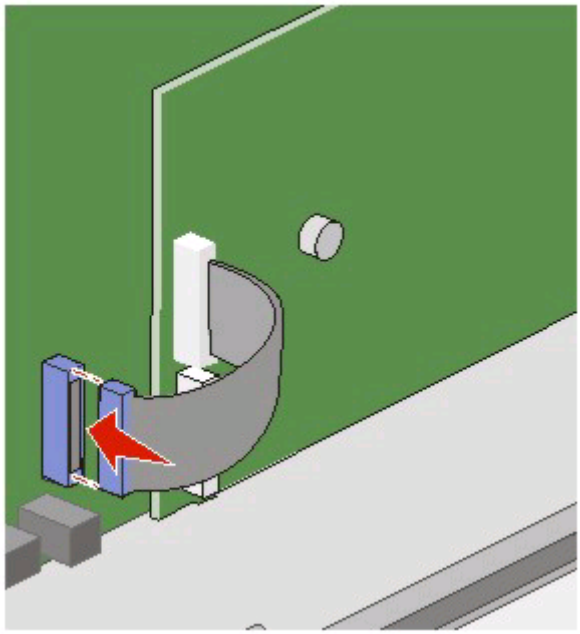


11 Tighten the long thumbscrew.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not overtighten the thumbscrew.

12 Insert the plug of the ISP interface cable into the receptacle of the system board.

Note: The plugs and receptacles are color-coded.



13 Reattach the system board cover.

Installing a printer hard disk

Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

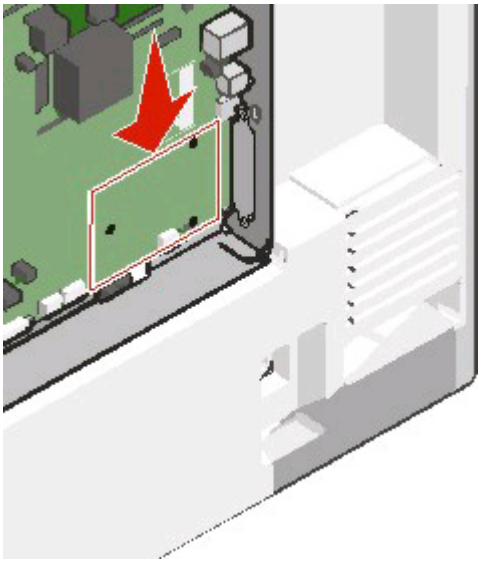
Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

1 Access the system board.

For more information, see "Accessing the system board" on page 20.

2 Unpack the printer hard disk.

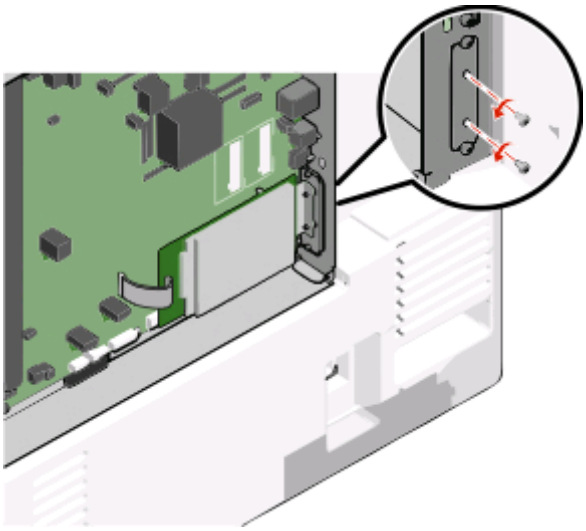
3 Locate the appropriate connector on the system board.



Note: If an optional ISP is currently installed, then the printer hard disk must be installed onto the ISP.

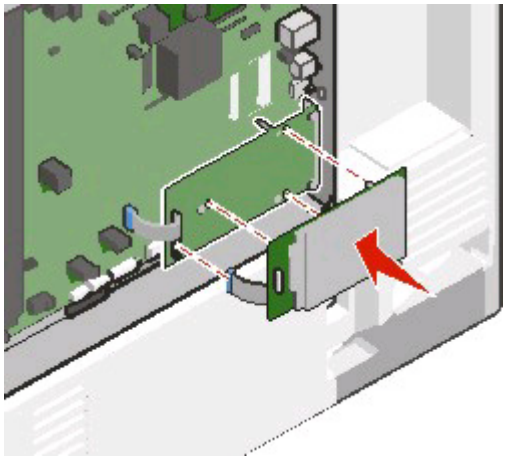
To install a printer hard disk onto the ISP:

a Using a flathead screwdriver, loosen the screws.



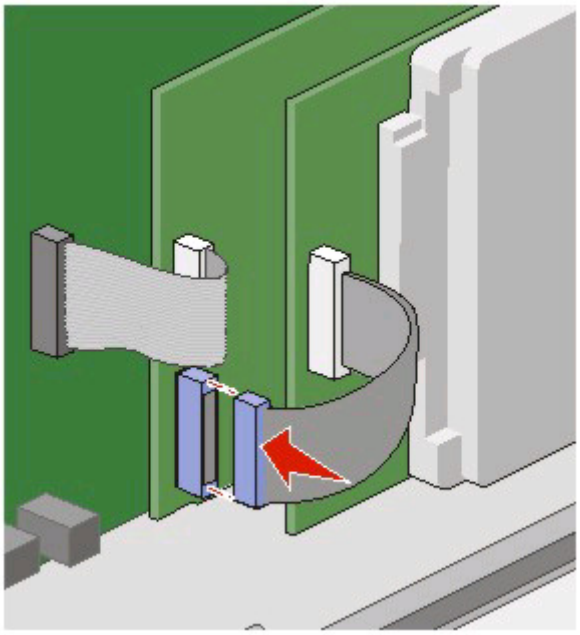
b Remove the screws attached to the printer hard disk mounting bracket, and then remove the bracket.

c Align the standoffs of the printer hard disk to the holes in the ISP, and then press down on the printer hard disk until the standoffs are in place.



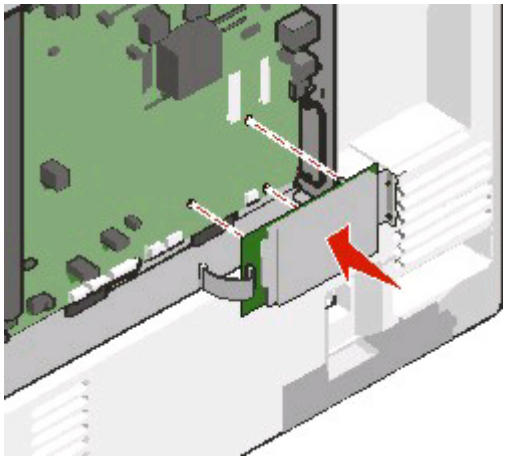
d Insert the plug of the printer hard disk interface cable into the receptacle of the ISP.

Note: The plugs and receptacles are color-coded.

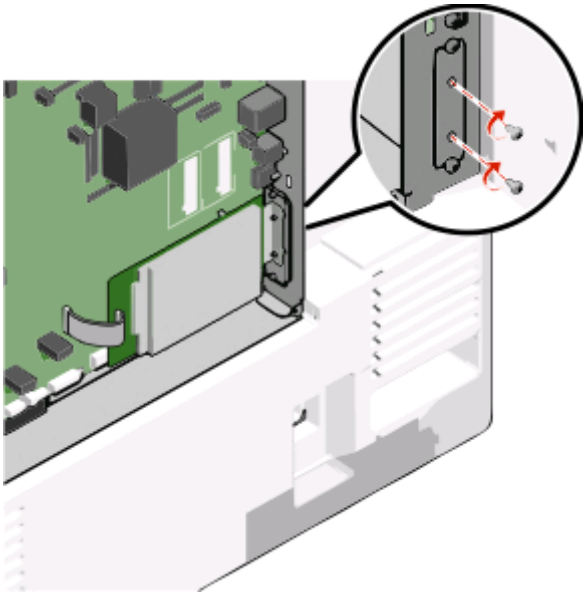


To install a printer hard disk directly on the system board:

a Align the standoffs of the printer hard disk to the holes in the system board, and then press down on the printer hard disk until the standoffs are in place.

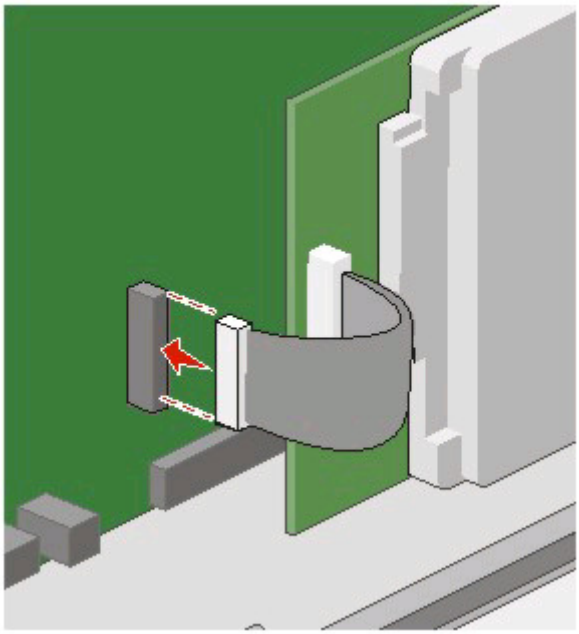


b Use the two provided screws to attach the printer hard disk mounting bracket.



c Insert the plug of the printer hard disk interface cable into the receptacle of the system board.

Note: The plugs and receptacles are color-coded.



4 Reattach the system board cover.

Removing a printer hard disk

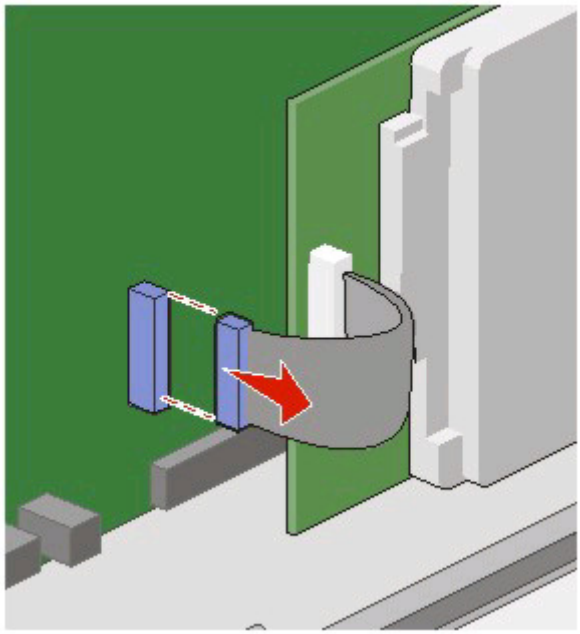
Note: This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

Warning—Potential Damage: System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

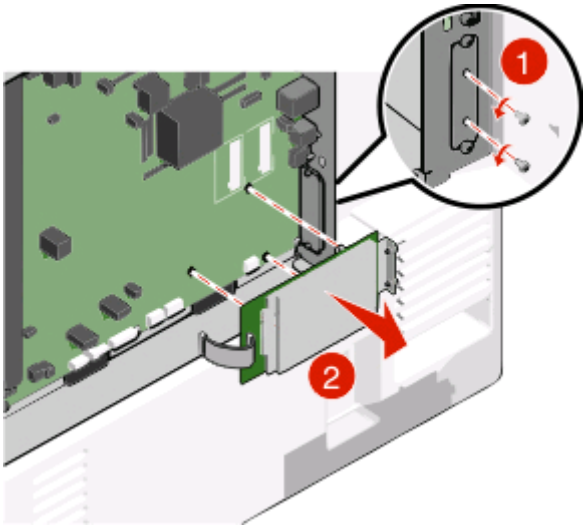
1. Access the system board.

   For more information, see "Accessing the system board" on page 20.

2. Unplug the printer hard disk interface cable from the system board, leaving the cable attached to the printer hard disk. To unplug the cable, squeeze the paddle at the plug of the interface cable to disengage the latch before pulling the cable out.



3. Remove the screws while holding the printer hard disk in place, and then remove the printer hard disk.



4 Set the printer hard disk aside.

5 Reattach the system board cover.

Order of installation

CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD: Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see **www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters**.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

Install the printer and any options you have purchased in the following order:

- Caster base
- Optional spacer
- Optional 550-sheet trays or 2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder
- Standard 550-sheet trays
- Printer

For information on installing a caster base, a 550- or 2,000-sheet optional tray, spacer, or any of the finishers, see the setup documentation that came with the option.

Installing optional trays

The printer supports the following optional input sources:

- 550-sheet tray
- 2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD: Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see **www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters**.

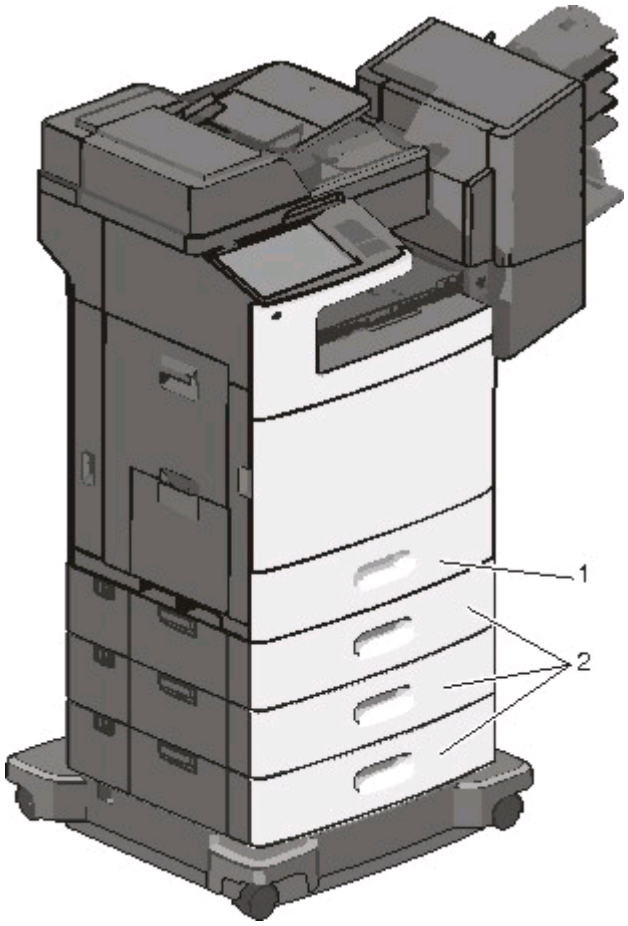
1 Unpack the optional tray, and then remove all packing material.

2 Place the tray near the printer.

3 Turn the printer off.

4 Align the printer to the tray, and then lower the printer into place.

Note: Optional trays lock together when stacked. When necessary, remove stacked trays one at a time from the top down.



1	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)
2	Optional 550-sheet trays

5 Turn the printer back on.

6 Set the printer software to recognize the optional input source.

For more information, see "Updating available options in the printer driver" on page 41.

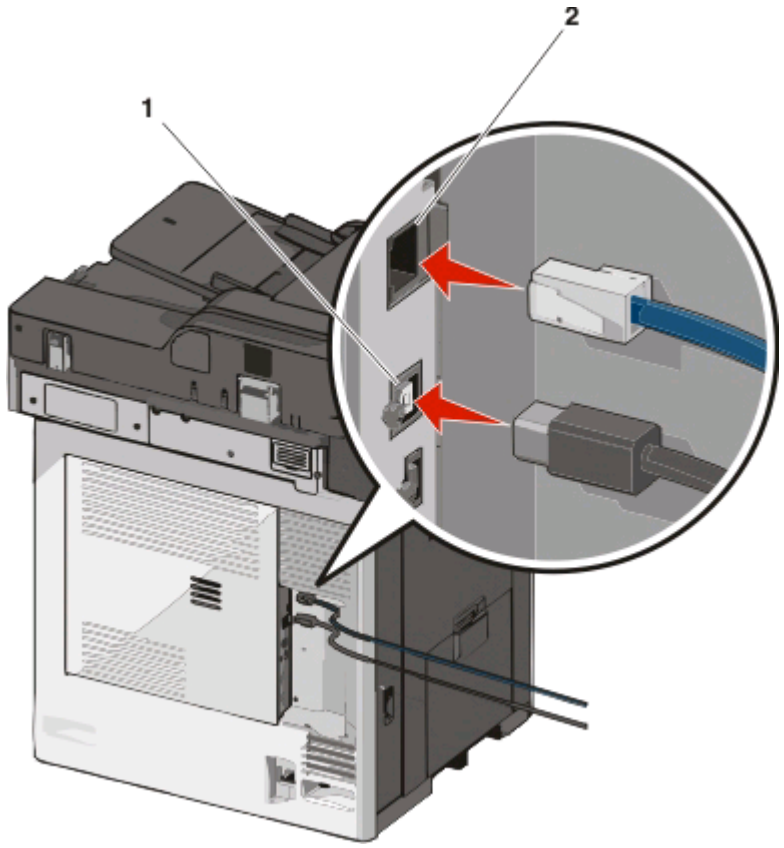
Attaching cables

CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY: Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

Connect the printer to the computer using a USB cable or Ethernet cable.

Be sure to match the following:

- The USB symbol on the cable with the USB symbol on the printer
- The appropriate Ethernet cable to the Ethernet port



1	USB port **Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the USB cable, any network adapter, or the printer in the area shown while actively printing. A loss of data or a malfunction can occur.
2	Ethernet port

Verifying printer setup

Once all hardware and software options are installed and the printer is turned on, verify that the printer is set up correctly by printing the following:

- **Menu settings page**—Use this page to verify that all printer options are installed correctly. A list of installed options appears toward the bottom of the page. If an option you installed is not listed, then it is not installed correctly. Remove the option and install it again.
- **Network setup page**—If your printer is a network model and is attached to a network, print a network setup page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

Printing a menu settings page

From the home screen, navigate to:

> **Reports** > **Menu Settings Page**

Printing a network setup page

If the printer is attached to a network, then print a network setup page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

1. From the home screen, navigate to:

   > **Reports** > **Network Setup Page**

2. Check the first section of the network setup page, and confirm that the status is **Connected**.

   If the status is **Not Connected**, then the LAN drop may not be active, or the network cable may be malfunctioning. Consult a system support person for a solution, and then print another network setup page.

Setting up the printer software

Installing the printer software

For Windows users

1. Close all open software programs.
2. Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD.

   Wait for the Welcome screen to appear.

   If the CD does not launch after a minute, then do the following:

   a. Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.

   b. In the Start Search or Run box, type **D:\setup.exe**, where **D** is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.
3. Click **Recommended Install** and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

For Macintosh users

1. Close all open software applications.
2. Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD, and then double-click the software installer package.
3. Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Using the World Wide Web

1. Go to the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com**.
2. From the Drivers & Downloads menu, click **Driver Finder**.
3. Select your printer, and then select your operating system.
4. Download the driver and then install it.

Updating available options in the printer driver

Once the printer software and any options are installed, it may be necessary to manually add the options in the printer driver to make them available for print jobs.

For Windows users

1. Open the Printers folder:
   a. Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
   b. In the Start Search or Run box, type `control printers`.
   c. Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.
2. Select your printer.
3. Right-click the printer, and then select **Properties**.
4. Click the **Configuration** tab.
5. Click **Update Now - Ask Printer** or manually add any installed hardware options under Configuration Options.
6. Click **Apply**.

For Macintosh users

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

1. From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences** > **Print & Fax**.
2. Select your printer, and then click **Options & Supplies**.
3. Click **Driver**, and then add any installed hardware options.
4. Click **OK**.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

1. From the Finder desktop, choose **Go** > **Applications**.
2. Double-click **Utilities** > **Print Center** or **Printer Setup Utility**.
3. Select the printer, and then from the Printers menu, choose **Show Info**.
4. From the pop-up menu, choose **Installable Options**.
5. Add any installed hardware options, and then click **Apply Changes**.

Setting up wireless printing

Note: A Service Set Identifier (SSID) is a name assigned to a wireless network. Wireless Encryption Protocol (WEP) and Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) are types of security used on a network.

Information you will need to set up the printer on a wireless network

Note: Do not connect the installation or network cables until prompted to do so by the setup software.

- **SSID**—The SSID is also referred to as the network name.
- **Wireless Mode (or Network Mode)**—The mode will be either infrastructure or ad hoc.
- **Channel (for ad hoc networks)**—The channel defaults to auto for infrastructure networks.

  Some ad hoc networks will also require the auto setting. Check with your system support person if you are not sure which channel to select.
- **Security Method**—There are three basic options for Security Method:
  - WEP key

    If your network uses more than one WEP key, enter up to four in the provided spaces. Select the key currently in use on the network by selecting the Default WEP Transmit Key.

    or
  - WPA or WPA2 passphrase

    WPA includes encryption as an additional layer of security. The choices are AES or TKIP. Encryption must be set for the same type on the router and on the printer, or the printer will not be able to communicate on the network.
  - No security

    If your wireless network does not use any type of security, then you will not have any security information.

    Note: Using an unsecured wireless network is not recommended.

If you are installing the printer on an 802.1X network using the Advanced method, then you may need the following:

- Authentication type
- Inner authentication type
- 802.1X username and password
- Certificates

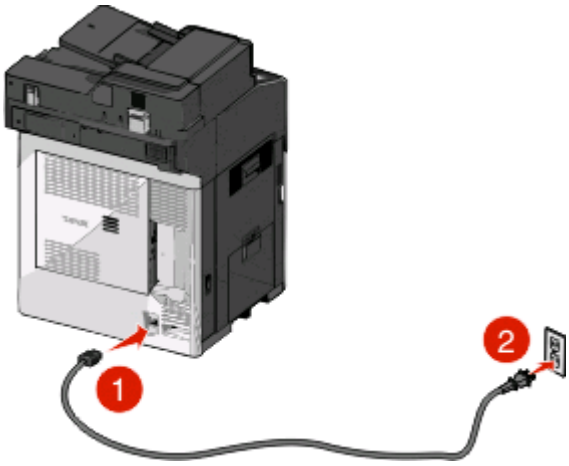
Note: For more information on configuring 802.1X security, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD.

Installing the printer on a wireless network (Windows)

Before you install the printer on a wireless network, make sure:

- Your wireless network is set up and working properly.
- The computer you are using is connected to the same wireless network where you want to set up the printer.

1 Connect the power cable to the printer and then to a properly grounded electrical outlet, and then turn the printer on.



Make sure the printer and computer are fully on and ready.

Do not connect the USB cable until instructed to do so on the computer screen.

2 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD.

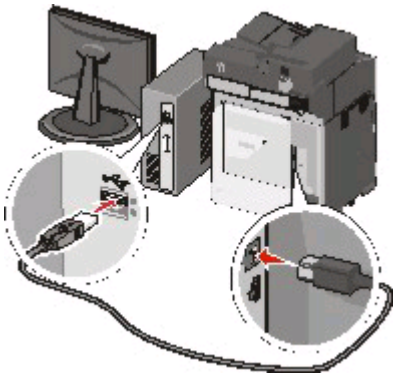
3 Click **Recommended Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

4 Select **Wireless connection** when asked to choose a connection type.

5 From the Wireless Configuration dialog, select **Guided Setup**.

Note: Choose **Advanced Setup** only if you want to customize your installation.

6 Temporarily connect a USB cable between the computer on the wireless network and the printer.



Note: After the printer is configured, the software will instruct you to disconnect the temporary USB cable so you can print wirelessly.

7 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

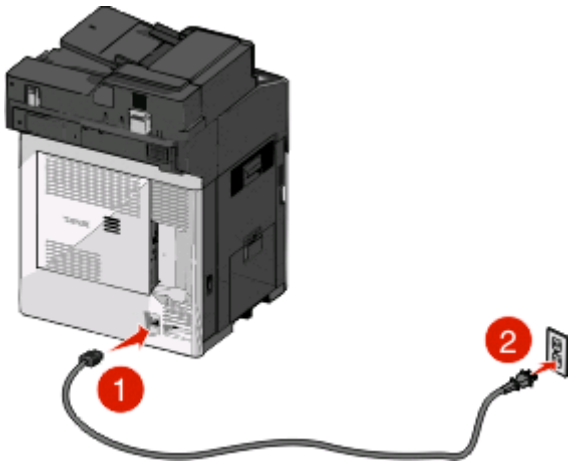
8 To allow other computers on the wireless network to use the wireless printer, follow steps 2 through 6 and step 8 for each computer.

Installing the printer on a wireless network (Macintosh)

Make sure to disconnect the Ethernet cable when installing the printer on a wireless network.

Prepare to configure the printer

1 Connect the power cable to the printer and then to a properly grounded electrical outlet, and then turn the printer on.



2 Locate the printer MAC address.

a From the home screen, navigate to:

> **Reports** > **Network Setup Page**

b In the Standard Network Card section, look for **UAA (MAC)**.

Note: You will need this information later.

Enter the printer information

1. Access the AirPort options:

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > **Network** > **AirPort**

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

From the Finder, navigate to:

Applications > **Internet Connect** > **AirPort**

2. From the Network Name pop-up menu, select **print server [yyyyyy]**, where the y's are the last six digits of the MAC address you obtained earlier from the printed network setup page.
3. Open a Safari browser.
4. From the Bookmarks drop-down menu, select **Show** or **Show All Bookmarks**.
5. Under COLLECTIONS, select **Bonjour** or **Rendezvous**, and then double-click the printer name.

   Note: The application referred to as *Rendezvous* in Mac OS X version 10.2 is now called *Bonjour* by Apple Inc.
6. From the Embedded Web Server, navigate to where the wireless settings information are stored.

Configure the printer for wireless access

1. Type the name of your network (SSID) in the appropriate field.
2. Select **Infrastructure** as your Network Mode if you are using a wireless router.
3. Select the type of security you want to use to protect your wireless network.
4. Enter the security information necessary for the printer to join your wireless network.
5. Click **Submit**.
6. Open the AirPort application on your computer:

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

From the Apple menu, navigate to:

System Preferences > **Network** > **AirPort**

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

From the Finder, navigate to:

Applications > **Internet Connect** > **AirPort**

7. From the Network pop-up menu, select the name of your wireless network.

Configure your computer to use the printer wirelessly

To print on a network printer, each Macintosh user must install a custom *PostScript Printer Description* (PPD) file and create a printer in the Print Center or Printer Setup Utility.

1. Install a PPD file on the computer:
   a. Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD, and then double-click the installer package for the printer.
   b. Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
   c. Select a Destination, and then click **Continue**.
   d. From the Easy Install screen, click **Install**.
   e. Type the user password, and then click **OK**.
   All necessary software applications are installed on the computer.
   f. Click **Close** when installation is complete.
2. Add the printer:
   a. For IP printing:

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

1. From the Apple menu, navigate to:
   System Preferences > **Print & Fax**
2. Click **+**, and then click the **IP** tab.
3. Type the IP address of your printer in the Address field, and then click **Add**.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

1. From the Finder, navigate to:
   Applications > **Utilities**
2. Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
3. From the Printer List, choose **Add**, and then click **IP Printer**.
4. Type the IP address of your printer in the Address field, and then click **Add**.

   b. For AppleTalk printing:

   Note: Make sure AppleTalk is activated on your printer.

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

1. From the Apple menu, navigate to:
   System Preferences > **Print & Fax**
2. Click **+**, and then navigate to:
   AppleTalk > select the printer from the list > **Add**

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

1. From the Finder, navigate to:
   Applications > **Utilities**
2. Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
3. From the Printer List, click **Add**.
4. Click **Default Browser** tab > **More Printers**.
5. From the first pop-up menu, select **AppleTalk**.

6 From the second pop-up menu, select **Local AppleTalk Zone**.

7 Select the printer from the list, and then click **Add**.

Installing the printer on a wired network

These instructions apply to Ethernet and fiber optic network connections.

Note: Make sure you have completed the initial setup of the printer.

For Windows users

1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD.

Wait for the Welcome screen to appear.

If the CD does not launch after a minute, then do the following:

a Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.

b In the Start Search or Run box, type `D:\setup.exe`, where `D` is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.

c Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

2 Click **Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Note: To configure the printer using a static IP address, using IPv6, or to configure printers using scripts, select **Administrator Tools**.

3 Select **Ethernet connection**, and then click **Continue**.

4 Follow the instructions on the computer screen, and then select **Guided Setup (Recommended)**.

5 Attach the appropriate cable to the computer and to the printer when instructed to do so.

6 Select your printer from the list, and then click **Continue**.

Note: If your configured printer does not appear in the list, then click **Modify Search**.

7 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

For Macintosh users

1 Allow the network DHCP server to assign an IP address to the printer.

2 Obtain the printer IP address.

a From the home screen, navigate to:

> **Reports** > **Network Setup Page**

b In the TCP/IP section of the network setup page, look for `IP Address`.

Note: You will need the IP address if you are configuring access for computers on a different subnet than the printer.

3 Install the drivers, and then add the printer.

a Install a PPD file on the computer:

1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD, and then double-click the installer package for the printer.

2 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

3 Select a destination, and then click **Continue**.

4 From the Easy Install screen, click **Install**.
5 Enter the user password, and then click **OK**.
All the necessary software is installed on the computer.
6 Click **Close** when installation is complete.

b Add the printer:

- For IP printing:

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:
System Preferences > **Print & Fax**
2 Click **+**, and then click the **IP** tab.
3 Type the IP address of your printer in the Address field, and then click **Add**.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

1 From the Finder, navigate to:
Applications > **Utilities**
2 Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
3 From the Printer List, click **Add**, and then click **IP Printer**.
4 Type in the IP address of your printer in the Address field, and then click **Add**.

- For AppleTalk printing:

Note: Make sure AppleTalk is activated on your printer.

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:
System Preferences > **Print & Fax**
2 Click **+**, and then navigate to:
AppleTalk > select the printer from the list > **Add**

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

1 From the Finder, navigate to:
Applications > **Utilities**
2 Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
3 From the Printer List, click **Add**.
4 Click **Default Browser** tab > **More Printers**.
5 From the first pop-up menu, select **AppleTalk**.
6 From the second pop-up menu, select **Local AppleTalk Zone**.
7 Select the printer from the list, and then click **Add**.

Note: If the printer does not show up in the list, then you may need to add it using the IP address. For more information, contact your system support person.

Changing port settings after installing a new network Internal Solutions Port

When a new Lexmark Internal Solutions Port (ISP) is installed in the printer, the printer configurations on computers that access the printer must be updated since the printer will be assigned a new IP address. All computers that access the printer must be updated with this new IP address.

Notes:

- If the printer has a static IP address, then you do not need to make any changes to the computer configurations.
- If the computers are configured to use network name that will stay the same, instead of by IP address, then you do not need to make any changes to your computer configurations.
- If you are adding a wireless ISP to a printer previously configured for a wired connection, then make sure the wired network is disconnected when you configure the printer to operate wirelessly. If the wired connection remains connected, then the wireless configuration will complete, but the wireless ISP will not be active. In the event that the printer was configured for a wireless ISP while still attached to a wired connection, disconnect the wired connection, turn the printer off, and then turn the printer back on again. This will enable the wireless ISP.
- Only one network connection at a time is active. If you want to switch the connection type between wired and wireless, you must first turn the printer off, connect the cable (to switch to a wired connection) or disconnect the cable (to switch to a wireless connection), and then turn the printer on.

For Windows users

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
2. Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
3. In the Start Search or Run box, type `control printers`.
4. Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

   The printer folder opens.
5. Locate the printer that has changed.

   Note: If there is more than one copy of the printer, then update all of them with the new IP address.
6. Right-click the printer.
7. Click **Properties** > **Ports** tab.
8. Select the port from the list, and then click **Configure Port**.
9. Type the new IP address in the “Printer Name or IP Address” field.
10. Click **OK** > **Close**.

For Macintosh users

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

  Note: You will need the IP address if you are configuring access for computers on a different subnet than the printer.

2 Add the printer:

- For IP printing:

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

a From the Apple menu, navigate to:
System Preferences > **Print & Fax**

b Click **+**, and then click the **IP** tab.

c Type the IP address of your printer in the Address field, and then click **Add**.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

a From the Finder, navigate to:
Applications > **Utilities**

b Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.

c From the Printer List, click **Add**, and then click **IP Printer**.

d Type the IP address of your printer in the Address field, and then click **Add**.

- For AppleTalk printing:

  Note: Make sure AppleTalk is activated on your printer.

In Mac OS X version 10.5

a From the Apple menu, navigate to:
System Preferences > **Print & Fax**

b Click **+**, and then navigate to:
AppleTalk > select the printer from the list > **Add**

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

a From the Finder, navigate to:
Applications > **Utilities**

b Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.

c From the Printer List, click **Add**.

d Click the **Default Browser** tab > **More Printers**.

e From the first pop-up menu, select **AppleTalk**.

f From the second pop-up menu, select **Local AppleTalk Zone**.

g Select the printer from the list, and then click **Add**.

Setting up serial printing

In serial printing, data is transferred one bit at a time. Although serial printing is usually slower than parallel printing, it is the preferred option when there is a great deal of distance between the printer and computer or when an interface with a better transfer rate is not available.

After installing the serial or communication (COM) port, you will need to configure the printer and the computer so they can communicate. Make sure you have connected the serial cable to the COM port on your printer.

1. Set the parameters in the printer:
   a. From the printer control panel, navigate to the menu with port settings.
   b. Locate the submenu with serial port settings.
   c. Make any necessary changes to the serial settings.
   d. Save the new settings, and then print a menu settings page.
2. Install the printer driver:
   a. Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD.
      Wait for the Welcome screen to appear.
      If the CD does not launch after a minute, then do the following:
      1. Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
      2. In the Start Search or Run box, type `D:\setup.exe`, where `D` is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.
   b. Click **Custom Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.
   c. From the Configure Printer Connection dialog, select **Connect through a port discovered on your computer**, and then select a port.
   d. If the port is not on the list, then click **Refresh** *or* navigate to:
      Add port > select a port type > enter necessary information > **OK**
   e. Click **Continue**.
      1. If you want to add another printer, then click **Add Another**.
      2. If you want to make changes, then select a printer, and then click **Edit**.
      3. Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
   f. Click **Finish**.
3. Set the COM port parameters:

   After installing the printer driver, set the serial parameters in the COM port assigned to the printer driver.

   Note: Make sure the serial parameters in the COM port match the serial parameters you set in the printer.
   a. Open the Device Manager.
      1. Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
      2. In the Start Search or Run box, type `devmgmt.msc`.
      3. Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.
   b. Look for Ports, and then click **+** to expand the list of available ports.
   c. Right-click the COM port where you attached the serial cable to your computer (example: COM1).
   d. Click **Properties**.
   e. On the Port Settings tab, set the serial parameters to the same serial parameters in the printer.
      Check the serial heading of the menu settings page for the printer settings.
   f. Click **OK**, and then close all the windows.
   g. Print a test page to verify printer installation.

Setting up and using the home screen applications

Making the home screen applications work for you

Button	Function
Forms and Favorites 	• Allows you to access frequently used forms and bookmarks. • Creates your own index of forms, information sheets, and other materials you print often. To print a form, see “Printing forms” on page 53.
Scan to Network 	Lets users scan their documents to specified network destinations.

You can set up and use the home screen applications by using the home screen buttons or the Embedded Web Server. To open the Embedded Web Server, type your printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Network/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

Configuring Forms and Favorites

The Forms and Favorites solution provides users with quick and easy access to frequently used forms or other information that is regularly printed.

The printer Bookmark function is used to create a link to a form or electronic file at a predetermined URL or network location. These files are then accessed from the Forms and Favorites icon.

When adding bookmarks from the printer Embedded Web Server, more configuration options are available than when adding bookmarks from the printer control panel.

Adding bookmarks using the printer control panel

Note: Bookmarks added from the printer control panel must be edited from the printer Embedded Web Server.

1. From the home screen, navigate to:

   Forms and Favorites > **Create Bookmark** > enter a name for the new bookmark > **Submit**

   This name will be displayed in the Forms menu when selecting a form to print.

2. Select **Network**, **FTP**, **HTTP**, or **HTTPS** to specify the network location or the protocol of the bookmark, and then touch **Submit**.

3. Choose an authentication option, or enter the URL or network location of the form.

   Note: The printer does not verify the validity of the URL or network location. Make sure that the location is entered correctly.

4. Touch **Submit**.

Adding bookmarks using the Embedded Web Server

1. From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings** > **Solutions** > **Embedded Solutions** > **Forms and Favorites**.

2. Under the Bookmarks field, choose **Add**.

   Note: You can also edit or delete a bookmark.

3. In the Name field, type a new bookmark name.

4. From the Location list, choose the protocol or specify if it is located in a network folder. You may choose **Network**, **FTP**, **HTTP**, or **HTTPS**.

5. In the PIN field, type a four-digit number. This field is optional and will require users to enter a PIN when printing the bookmark.

6. Type the network address, the network domain name, the port, or the URL based on the location of the bookmark specified in Step 4.

7. Under Authentication Options, select whether to require user authentication for this destination. The credentials are used to access the network destination.

8. In the sections that follow, adjust the settings as necessary:
   - Select check boxes to allow users to modify settings.
   - Use radio buttons and drop-down menus to specify the default settings.

9. Click **Apply** to save the new bookmark.

Printing forms

From the home screen, navigate to:

Forms and Favorites > select background to use > select the form from the list > enter the number of copies > **Submit**

Configuring Scan to Network

Scan to Network lets users of a printer scan their documents to network destinations specified by the network administrator. After the destinations (shared network folders) have been established on the network, the setup process for the application involves installing and configuring the application on the appropriate printer(s) using the Embedded Web Server.

Configuring a destination using the Embedded Web Server

1. From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings** > **Solutions** > **Embedded Solutions** > **Scan to Network** > **Configure**.
2. Click **Add**.

   Note: You can also edit or delete existing destinations.
3. Type a name for the destination.
4. Select **Network Folder** or **FTP Address**, and then configure the selected destination.
5. Under Authentication Options, select whether to require user authentication for this destination or not. The credentials are used to access the network destination.
6. In the sections that follow, adjust the settings as necessary:
   - Select check boxes to allow users to modify settings.
   - Use radio buttons and drop-down menus to specify the default settings.
7. Click **OK**.
8. Repeat to add, edit, or delete destinations.
9. Click **Apply**.

Scanning documents at the printer

1. Load the document into the scanner.

   Note: Documents may be loaded into the scanner in multiple ways. For information on the different methods of loading documents into the scanner, see the *User's Guide* that came with the printer.
2. Touch the application icon.
3. Select the destination where you want to receive the scanned document.

   Note: After steps 2 or 3, you may be required to enter the user name and password used to access the printer depending on how the printer and the particular destination are configured. Contact your system support person for login information.
4. Some additional job options may be available depending on how the application has been configured. Follow the instructions on the screen to update the options. Contact your system support person for more information on each option.
5. Touch **Scan It** or **Send It**. Depending on how the application has been configured, you may have the option to preview and make adjustments to scanned pages.

6 To scan additional documents, load the next document into the scanner and select one of the following from the confirmation screen:
   - Touch **Yes, to same destination** to scan the document to the previous destination.
   - Touch **Yes, to a different destination** to scan the document to a different destination.
   - Touch **No** to finish the operation and return to the printer Home screen.

Exporting and importing a configuration using the Embedded Web Server

You can export embedded solution configuration settings into a text file that can then be imported and used to apply the settings to one or more additional printers.

Exporting a configuration

1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings** > **Solutions** > **Embedded Solutions** > **Scan to Network**.

2 From Installed Solutions, click the name of the application you want to configure.

3 Click **Configure** > **Export**.

4 Follow the instructions in the computer screen to save the configuration file, and then enter a unique file name or use the default name.

   Note: If a `JVM Out of Memory` error occurs, then repeat the export until the settings file is saved.

Importing a configuration

1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings** > **Solutions** > **Embedded Solutions** > **Scan to Network**.

2 From Installed Solutions, click the name of the application you want to configure.

3 Click **Configure** > **Import**.

4 Browse to the saved configuration file, and then load or preview it.

   Note: If a timeout occurs and a blank screen appears, refresh the browser, and then click **Apply**.

Minimizing your printer's environmental impact

Lexmark is committed to environmental sustainability and is continually improving its printers to reduce their impact on the environment. We design with the environment in mind, engineer our packaging to reduce materials, and provide collection and recycling programs. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com/environment**
- The Lexmark recycling program at **www.lexmark.com/recycle**

By selecting certain printer settings or tasks, you may be able to reduce your printer's impact even further. This chapter outlines the settings and tasks that may yield a greater environmental benefit.

Saving paper and toner

Studies show that as much as 80% of the carbon footprint of a printer is related to paper usage. You can significantly reduce your carbon footprint by using recycled paper and the following printing suggestions, such as printing on both sides of the paper and printing multiple pages on one side of a single sheet of paper.

For information on how you can quickly save paper and energy using one printer setting, see "Using Eco-Mode".

Using recycled paper

As an environmentally conscious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled office paper produced specifically for use in laser printers. For more information on recycled papers that work well with your printer, see “Using recycled paper and other office papers” on page 74.

Conserving supplies

Use both sides of the paper

If your printer model supports duplex printing, you can control whether print appears on one or two sides of the paper by selecting **2-sided printing** from the Print dialog or from the Lexmark Toolbar.

Place multiple pages on one sheet of paper

You can print up to 16 consecutive pages of a multiple-page document onto one side of a single sheet of paper by selecting a setting from the Multipage printing (N-Up) section of the Print dialog screen.

Check your first draft for accuracy

Before printing or making multiple copies of a document:

- Use the preview feature, which you can select from the Print dialog or from the Lexmark Toolbar to see how the document will look like before you print it.
- Print one copy of the document to check its content and format for accuracy.

Avoid paper jams

Correctly set the paper type and size to avoid paper jams. For more information, see “Avoiding jams” on page 240.

Print in black and white

To print all text and graphics using only the black print cartridge, set the printer to Black Only. For more information, see “Printing in black and white” on page 86.

Saving energy

Using Eco-Mode

1. Type the printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:

   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2. Click **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Eco-Mode** > select a setting > **Submit**.

Choose	To
Off	Use factory default settings for all settings associated with Eco-Mode. This setting supports the performance specifications of your printer.
Energy	Reduce energy use, especially when the printer is idle. • The printer enters Sleep mode after one minute of inactivity. • When the printer enters Sleep mode, the printer control panel display and the standard exit bin lights are turned off. • If scanning is supported, then the scanner lamps are activated only when a scan job is started.
Energy/Paper	Use all the settings associated with Energy mode and Paper mode.
Paper	• Enable the automatic duplex feature. • Turn off print log features.

Reducing printer noise

To select a Quiet Mode setting using the Embedded Web Server:

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2. Click **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Quiet Mode** > select a setting > **Submit**.

Choose	To
Off **Note:** Selecting **Photo** from the driver may disable Quiet Mode and provide better print quality and full speed printing.	Use factory default settings. This setting supports the performance specifications of your printer.
On	Reduce printer noise. • Print jobs will process at a reduced speed. • Printer engine motors do not start until a document is ready to print. There will be a short delay before the first page is printed. • If your printer has faxing capability, fax sounds are reduced or disabled, including those made by the fax speaker and ringer. The fax is placed in standby mode. • The alarm control and cartridge alarm sounds are turned off. • The printer will ignore the Advance Start command.

Adjusting Sleep Mode

To save energy, you can decrease the number of minutes before the printer enters Sleep Mode.

Available settings range from 1–240 minutes. The factory default setting is 30 minutes.

Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
2. Click **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Timeouts**.
3. In the Sleep Mode field, enter the number of minutes you want the printer to wait before it enters Sleep Mode.
4. Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

1. From the home screen, navigate to:

   > **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Timeouts**
2. Touch the arrows next to **Sleep Mode** to select the number of minutes you want the printer to wait before it enters Sleep Mode.
3. Touch **Submit**.

Using Hibernate Mode

Hibernate is an ultra-low power operating mode. When operating in Hibernate mode, the printer is essentially off, and all other systems and devices are powered down safely.

Note: The Hibernate and Sleep modes can be scheduled.

Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Type the printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
2. Click **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Sleep Button Settings**.
3. From the Press Sleep Button or Press and Hold Sleep Button drop-down, select **Hibernate**.
4. Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

1. From the home screen, navigate to:

   > **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Press Sleep Button** or **Press and Hold Sleep Button** > **Hibernate**
2. Touch **Submit**.

Adjusting the brightness of the display

To save energy, or if you have trouble reading your display, then adjust the brightness of the display.

Available settings range from 20–100. The factory default setting is 100.

Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
2. Click **Settings** > **General Settings**.
3. In the Screen Brightness field, enter the brightness percentage you want for the display.
4. Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

1. From the home screen, navigate to:

   > **Settings** > **General Settings**
2. Touch the arrows until **`Screen Brightness`** appears, and then select a setting.
3. Touch **Submit**.

Setting the standard exit bin light

To save energy, you can dim or turn off the output lighting for the standard exit bin.

Available settings are Off, Dim, and Bright.

The factory default setting for Normal/Standby Mode is Bright.

When Eco-Mode is set to Energy or Energy/Paper, then the light setting is Dim.

When in Sleep Mode, then the light is off.

Using the Embedded Web Server

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:

   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2. Click **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Output Lighting**.
3. From the Normal/Standby Mode list, select the light setting for the standard exit bin when in Ready or Standby mode.
4. Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

1. From the home screen, navigate to:

   > **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Output Lighting**

2. Touch the arrow button next to **Normal/Standby Mode** to select the light settings for the standard exit bin when in Ready or Standby Mode.
3. Touch **Submit**.

Recycling

Lexmark provides collection programs and environmentally progressive approaches to recycling. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com/environment**
- The Lexmark recycling program at **www.lexmark.com/recycle**

Recycling Lexmark products

To return Lexmark products for recycling:

1. Visit our Web site at **www.lexmark.com/recycle**.
2. Find the product type you want to recycle, and then select your country or region from the list.
3. Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Recycling Lexmark packaging

Lexmark continually strives to minimize packaging. Less packaging helps to ensure that Lexmark printers are transported in the most efficient and environmentally sensitive manner and that there is less packaging to dispose of. These efficiencies result in fewer greenhouse emissions, energy savings, and natural resource savings.

Lexmark cartons are 100% recyclable where corrugated recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

The foam used in Lexmark packaging is recyclable where foam recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

When you return a cartridge to Lexmark, you can reuse the box that the cartridge came in. Lexmark will recycle the box.

Returning Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling

The Lexmark Cartridge Collection Program diverts millions of Lexmark cartridges from landfills annually by making it both easy and free for Lexmark customers to return used cartridges to Lexmark for reuse or recycling. One hundred percent of the empty cartridges returned to Lexmark are either reused or demanufactured for recycling. Boxes used to return the cartridges are also recycled.

To return Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling, follow the instructions that came with your printer or cartridge and use the prepaid shipping label. You can also do the following:

1. Visit our Web site at **www.lexmark.com/recycle**.
2. From the Toner Cartridges section, select your country or region from the list.
3. Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

Loading paper and specialty media

This section explains how to load the 550-sheet trays, the 2,000-sheet tray, and the multipurpose feeder. It also includes information about paper orientation, setting the Paper Size and Paper Type, and linking and unlinking trays.

Setting the paper size and type

The Paper Size setting is automatically sensed according to the position of the paper guides in each tray except the multipurpose feeder. The Paper Size setting for the multipurpose feeder must be set manually from the Paper Size menu. The Paper Type setting must be set manually for all trays that do not contain plain paper.

From the home screen navigate to:

> **Paper Menu** > **Paper Size/Type** > select a tray > select the paper size or type > **Submit**

Configuring Universal paper settings

The Universal Paper Size is a user-defined setting that lets you print on paper sizes that are not preset in the printer menus. Set the Paper Size for the specified tray to Universal when the size you want is not available from the Paper Size menu. Then, specify all of the following Universal size settings for your paper:

- Units of Measure
- Portrait Width
- Portrait Height

Notes:

- The largest supported Universal size is 216 x 1219 mm (8.5 x 48 in.).
- The smallest supported Universal size is 76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) and loaded in the multipurpose feeder only.

1. From the home screen, navigate to:

   > **Paper Menu** > **Universal Setup** > **Units of Measure** > select a unit of measure

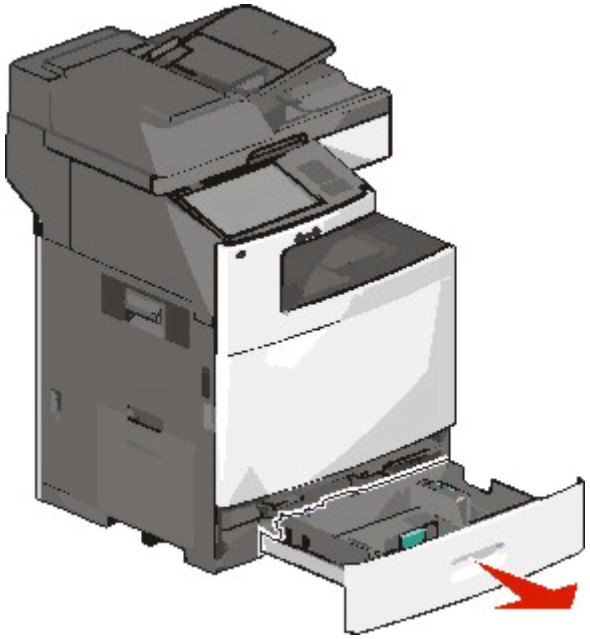
2. Touch **Portrait Width** or **Portrait Height** > select the width or height > **Submit**

Loading the standard or optional 550-sheet tray

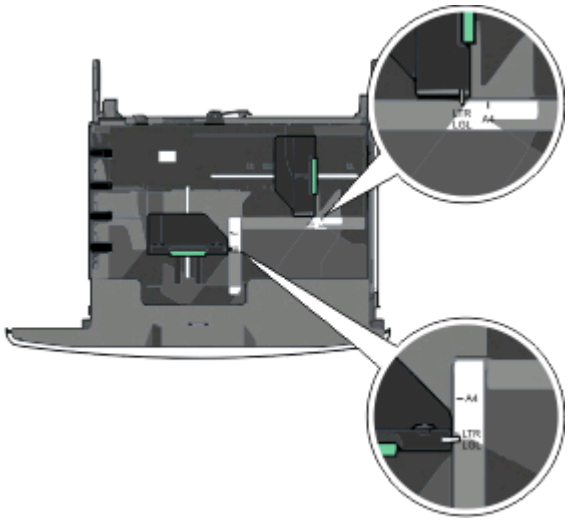
The printer has one standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1), and may have one or more optional 550-sheet trays. All 550-sheet trays support the same paper sizes and types.

CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD: To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each paper drawer or tray separately. Keep all other drawers or trays closed until needed.

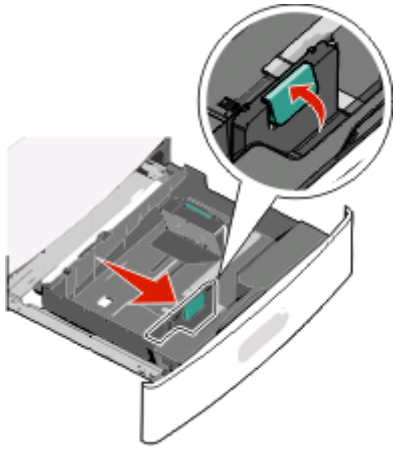
1 Pull the tray out.



Notice the size indicators on the bottom of the tray. Use these indicators to help position the length and width guides.

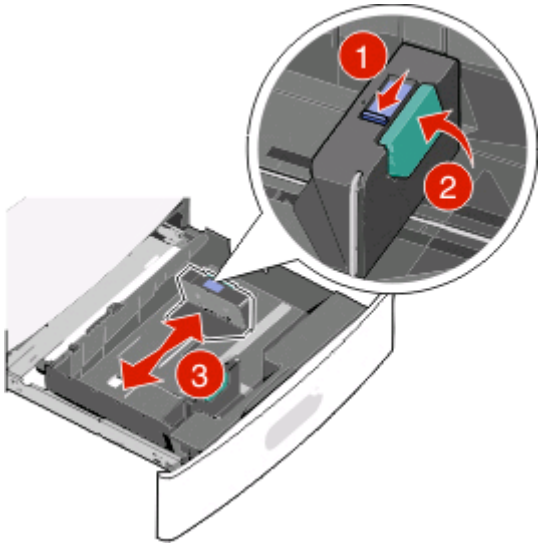


2 Squeeze and then slide the width guide to the correct position for the paper size you are loading.

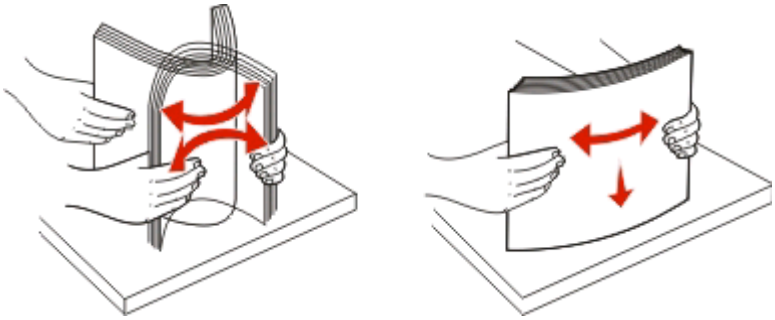


3 Squeeze and then slide the length guide to the correct position for the paper size you are loading.

Note: The length guide has a locking device. To unlock, push the button on top of the length guide backward. To lock, push the button forward when a length has been selected.



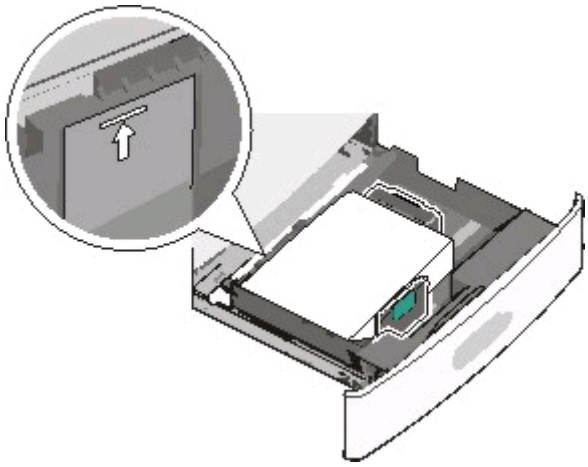
4 Flex the sheets back and forth to loosen them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



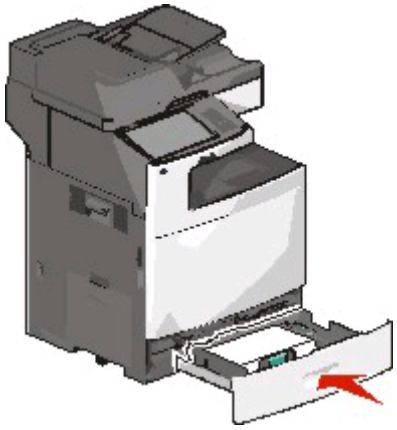
5 Load the paper stack with the recommended print side faceup.

Notes:

- Place print side facedown for duplex printing.
- Place pre-punched paper with the holes toward the front of the tray.
- Place letterheads faceup with the header on the left side of the tray.
- Place letterheads facedown with the header on the right side of the tray for duplex printing.
- Make sure the paper is below the maximum fill line located on the edge of the paper tray. Overloading the tray can cause paper jams and possible printer damage.



6 Insert the tray.



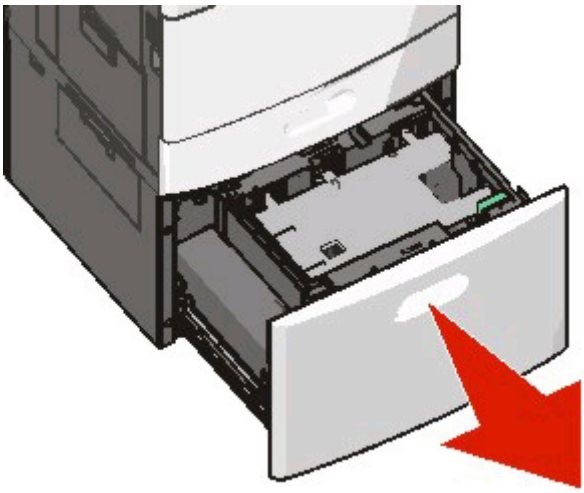
7 From the printer control panel, verify the Paper Size and Paper Type for the tray based on the paper you loaded.

Loading the 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder

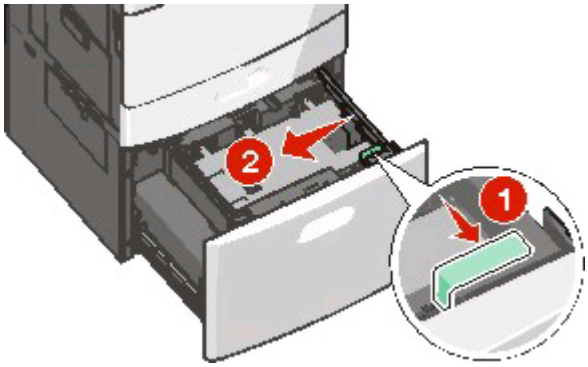
The high-capacity feeder can hold up to 2,000 sheets of A4-, letter-, or legal-size paper (80 g/m^2 or 20 lb).

CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD: To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each paper drawer or tray separately. Keep all other drawers or trays closed until needed.

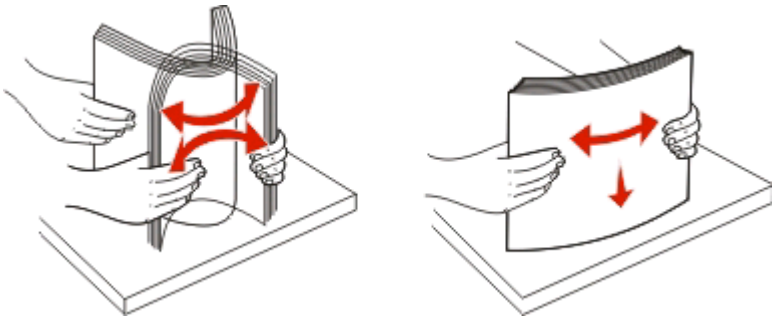
1 Pull the tray out.



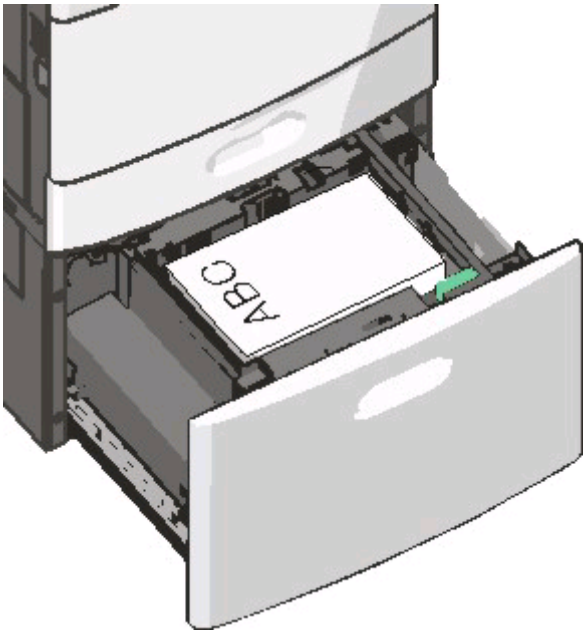
2 Adjust the width guide as necessary.



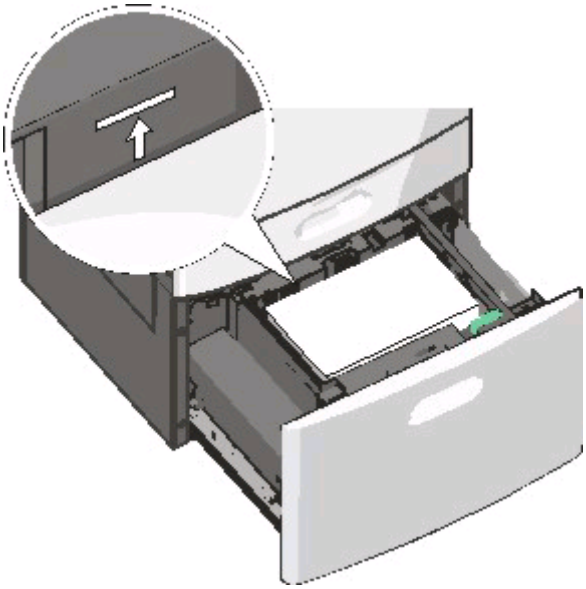
3 Flex the sheets back and forth to loosen them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



4 Load paper into the tray with the print side faceup.



Note: Make sure the paper is below the maximum fill line located on the edge of the paper tray. Overloading the tray can cause paper jams.



Notes:

- Place pre-punched paper with the holes toward the front of the tray.
- Place letterheads faceup with the header on the left side of the tray.
- Place letterheads facedown with the header on the right side of the tray for duplex printing.

5 Insert the tray.

Loading the multipurpose feeder

The multipurpose feeder can hold several sizes and types of print media, such as transparencies, labels, card stock, and envelopes. It can be used for single-page or manual printing, or as an additional tray.

The multipurpose feeder can hold approximately:

- 100 sheets of 75-g/m^2 (20-lb) paper
- 10 envelopes
- 75 transparencies

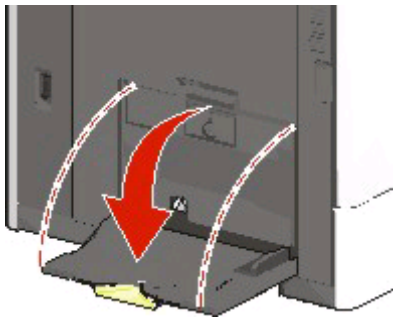
The multipurpose feeder accepts paper or specialty media within the following dimensions:

- Width—89 mm (3.5 in.) to 229 mm (9.02 in.)
- Length—127 mm (5 in.) to 1270 mm (50 in.)

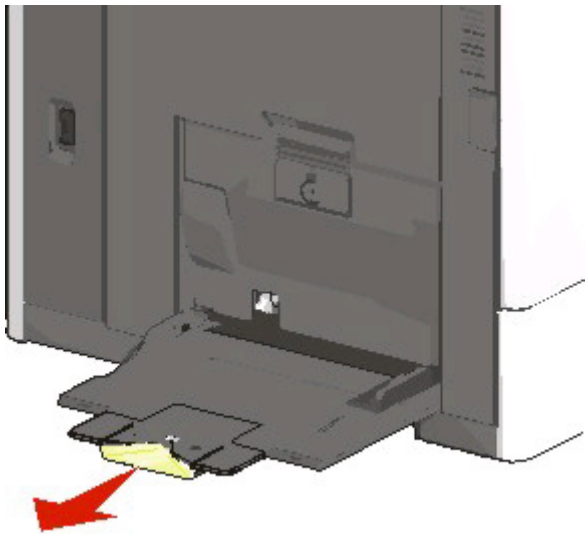
Note: Maximum width and length can be applied only to short-edge feeding.

Note: Do not add or remove paper or specialty media when the printer is printing from the multipurpose feeder or when the printer control panel indicator light is blinking. Doing so may cause a jam.

1. Pull down the multipurpose feeder door.

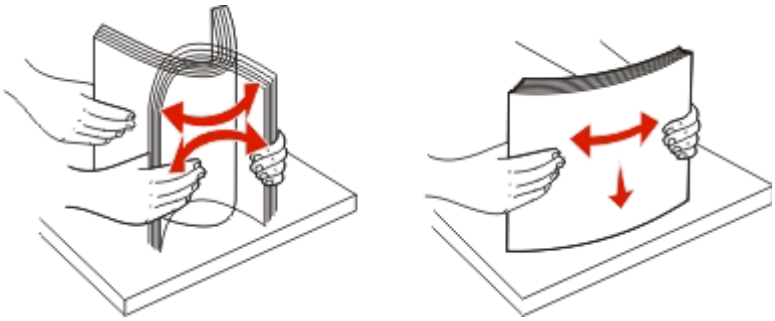


2. For paper or specialty media that is longer than letter-size paper, gently pull the extension until it is fully extended.

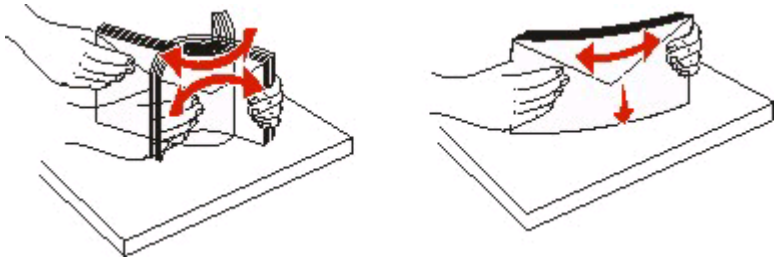


3 Flex the sheets of paper or specialty media back and forth to loosen them. Do not fold or crease them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.

Paper

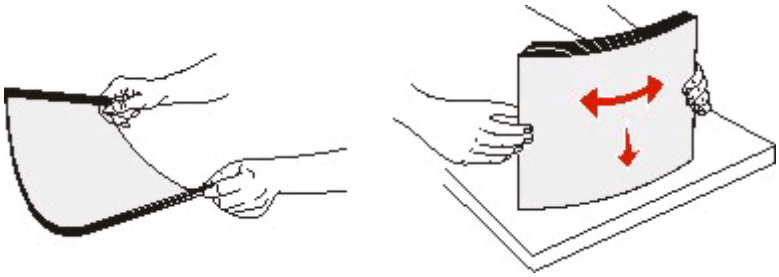


Envelopes



Transparencies

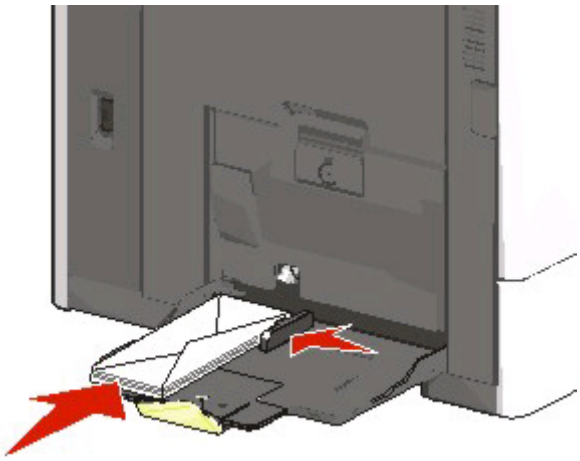
Note: Avoid scratching or touching the print side.



4 Push the paper pick tab, and then load the paper or specialty media. Slide the stack gently into the multipurpose feeder until it comes to a stop, and then release the paper pick tab.

Warning—Potential Damage: Pulling the paper out, without pushing the paper pick tab first, may cause jams or the paper pick tab to break.

- Load paper and transparencies with the recommended print side facedown and the short edge entering the printer first.
- For duplex letterhead printing, place the letterhead faceup and the header entering the printer last.
- Load envelopes with the flap side up and to the right.

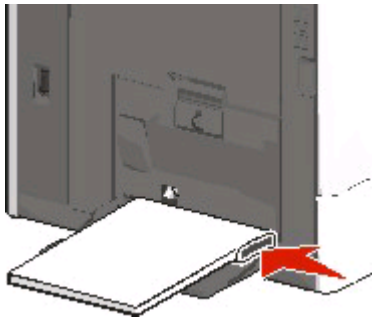


Warning—Potential Damage: Never use envelopes with stamps, clasps, snaps, windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These envelopes may severely damage the printer.

Notes:

- Do not exceed the maximum stack height by forcing paper or transparencies under the stack height limiter.
- Load only one size and type of paper at a time.

5 Adjust the width guide to lightly touch the edge of the stack. Make sure the paper or specialty media fits loosely in the multipurpose feeder, lies flat, and is not bent or wrinkled.



6 From the printer control panel, set the Paper Size and Paper Type for the multipurpose feeder (MP Feeder Size and MP Feeder Type) based on the paper or specialty media loaded.

Linking and unlinking trays

Linking trays

Tray linking is useful for large print jobs or multiple copies. When one linked tray is empty, paper feeds from the next linked tray. When the Paper Size and Paper Type settings are the same for any trays, the trays are automatically linked.

The printer automatically senses the Paper Size setting according to the position of the paper guides in each tray except the standard 550-sheet tray and the multipurpose feeder. The printer can sense A4, A5, JIS B5, Letter, Legal, Executive, and Universal paper sizes. The multipurpose feeder and trays using other paper sizes can be linked manually using the Paper Size menu available from the Paper Size/Type menu.

Note: To link the multipurpose feeder, Configure MP must be set to Cassette in the Paper menu in order for MP Feeder Size to appear as a menu item.

The Paper Type setting must be set for all trays from the Paper Type menu available from the Paper Size/Type menu.

Unlinking trays

Note: Trays that do not have the same settings as any other tray are not linked.

Change one of the following tray settings:

- Paper Type

  Paper Type names describe the paper characteristics. If the name that best describes your paper is used by linked trays, assign a different Paper Type name to the tray, such as Custom Type [x], or define your own custom name.
- Paper Size

  Load a different paper size to automatically change the Paper Size setting for a tray. Paper Size settings for the multipurpose feeder are not automatic; they must be set manually from the Paper Size menu.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not assign a Paper Type name that does not accurately describe the type of paper loaded in a tray. The temperature of the fuser varies according to the specified Paper Type. Prints may not be properly processed if an inaccurate Paper Type is selected.

Linking exit bins

Link exit bins to create a single output source. The printer automatically uses the next available bin as the output source.

The standard exit bin holds up to 550 sheets of 20-lb paper. If you need additional output capacity, you can purchase other optional exit bins.

Note: Not all exit bins support every paper size and type.

1. From the home screen, navigate to:

   > **Paper Menu** > **Bin Setup**

2. Touch the bin or bins you want to link, and then touch **Configure Bins** > **Link**.

Assigning a custom paper type name

Assign a custom paper type name to a tray when linking or unlinking trays.

From the home screen, navigate to:

> **Paper Menu** > **Paper Size/Type** > select a custom paper type name > select a tray > **Submit**

Creating a custom name for a paper type

If the printer is on a network, you can use the Embedded Web Server to define a name other than Custom Type [x] for each of the custom paper types loaded into the printer.

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2. Click **Settings** > **Paper Menu** > **Custom Name** > type a name > **Submit**.

   Note: This custom name will replace the Custom Type [x] name under the Custom Types and Paper Size and Type menus.

3. Click **Custom Types** > select a paper type > **Submit**.

Configuring a custom name

If the printer is on a network, then you can use the Embedded Web Server to define a name other than Custom Type [x] for each of the custom paper types loaded into the printer.

1. Type the printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.

   Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2. Click **Settings** > **Paper Menu** > **Custom Types** > select the custom name you want to configure > select a paper or specialty media type > **Submit**.

Paper and specialty media guidelines

Paper guidelines

Paper characteristics

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. Consider these characteristics when evaluating new paper stock.

Weight

The printer can automatically feed paper weights from 60 to 176 g/m^2 (16 to 47 lb bond) grain long. Paper lighter than 60 g/m^2 (16 lb) might not be stiff enough to feed properly, causing jams. For best performance, use 75 g/m^2 (20 lb bond) grain long paper. For paper smaller than 182 x 257 mm (7.2 x 10.1 in.), we recommend 90 g/m^2 (24 lb) or heavier paper.

Note: Duplex is supported only for 63 g/m^2–176 g/m^2 (17 lb–47 lb bond) paper.

Curl

Curl is the tendency for paper to curl at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl can occur after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped in hot, humid, cold, or dry conditions, even in the trays, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing and can cause feeding problems.

Smoothness

Paper smoothness directly affects print quality. If paper is too rough, the toner cannot fuse to it properly. If paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding or print quality issues. Always use paper between 100 and 300 Sheffield points; however, smoothness between 150 and 200 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.

Moisture content

The amount of moisture in paper affects both print quality and the ability of the printer to feed the paper correctly. Leave paper in its original wrapper until it is time to use it. This limits the exposure of paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance.

Condition paper before printing by storing it in its original wrapper in the same environment as the printer for 24 to 48 hours before printing. Extend the time several days if the storage or transportation environment is very different from the printer environment. Thick paper may also require a longer conditioning period.

Grain direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either *grain long*, running the length of the paper, or *grain short*, running the width of the paper.

For 60 to 135 g/m^2 (16 to 36 lb bond) paper, grain long paper is recommended. For papers heavier than 135 g/m^2, grain short is recommended.

Fiber content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100% chemically treated pulped wood. This content provides the paper with a high degree of stability resulting in fewer paper feeding problems and better print quality. Paper containing fibers such as cotton can negatively affect paper handling.

Selecting paper

Using appropriate paper prevents jams and helps ensure trouble-free printing.

To help avoid jams and poor print quality:

- *Always* use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading paper, know the recommended print side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- *Do not* use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- *Do not* mix paper sizes, types, or weights in the same source; mixing results in jams.
- *Do not* use coated papers unless they are specifically designed for electrophotographic printing.

Selecting preprinted forms and letterhead

Use these guidelines when selecting preprinted forms and letterhead:

- Use grain long for 60 to 90 g/m^2 (16 to 24 lb) weight paper.
- Use only forms and letterhead printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Avoid papers with rough or heavily textured surfaces.

Use papers printed with heat-resistant inks designed for use in xerographic copiers. The ink must be able to withstand temperatures up to 190°C (374°F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions. Use inks that are not affected by the resin in toner. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based generally meet these requirements; latex inks might not. When in doubt, contact the paper supplier.

Preprinted papers such as letterhead must be able to withstand temperatures up to 190°C (374°F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions.

Using recycled paper and other office papers

As an environmentally conscientious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled paper produced specifically for use in laser (electrophotographic) printers.

While no blanket statement can be made that all recycled paper will feed well, Lexmark consistently tests papers that represent recycled cut size copier papers available on the global market. This scientific testing is conducted with rigor and discipline. Many factors are taken into consideration both separately and as a whole, including the following:

- Amount of post-consumer waste (Lexmark tests up to 100% post-consumer waste content.)
- Temperature and humidity conditions (Testing chambers simulate climates from all over the world.)
- Moisture content (Business papers should have low moisture: 4–5%.)
- Bending resistance and proper stiffness means optimum feeding through the printer.
- Thickness (impacts how much can be loaded into a tray)
- Surface roughness (measured in Sheffield units, impacts print clarity and how well toner fuses to the paper)
- Surface friction (determines how easily sheets can be separated)

- Grain and formation (impacts curling, which also influences the mechanics of how the paper behaves as it moves through the printer)
- Brightness and texture (look and feel)

Recycled papers are better than ever; however, the amount of recycled content in a paper affects the degree of control over foreign matter. And while recycled papers are one good path to printing in an environmentally responsible manner, they are not perfect. The energy required to de-ink and deal with additives such as colorants and "glue" often generates more carbon emissions than does normal paper production. However, using recycled papers enables better resource management overall.

Lexmark concerns itself with the responsible use of paper in general based on life cycle assessments of its products. To gain a better understanding of the impact of printers on the environment, the company commissioned a number of life cycle assessments and found that paper was identified as the primary contributor (up to 80%) of carbon emissions caused throughout the entire life of a device (from design to end-of-life). This is due to the energy-intensive manufacturing processes required to make paper.

Thus, Lexmark seeks to educate customers and partners on minimizing the impact of paper. Using recycled paper is one way. Eliminating excessive and unnecessary paper consumption is another. Lexmark is well-equipped to help customers minimize printing and copying waste. In addition, the company encourages purchasing paper from suppliers who demonstrate their commitment to sustainable forestry practices.

Lexmark does not endorse specific suppliers, although a converter's product list for special applications is maintained. However, the following paper choice guidelines will help alleviate the environmental impact of printing:

1. Minimize paper consumption.
2. Be selective about the origin of wood fiber. Buy from suppliers who carry certifications such as the Forestry Stewardship Council (FSC) or The Program for the Endorsement of Forest Certification (PEFC). These certifications guarantee that the paper manufacturer uses wood pulp from forestry operators that employ environmentally and socially responsible forest management and restoration practices.
3. Choose the most appropriate paper for printing needs: normal 75 or 80 g/m^2 certified paper, lower weight paper, or recycled paper.

Unacceptable paper examples

Test results indicate that the following paper types are at risk for use with laser printers:

- Chemically treated papers used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as *carbonless papers*
- Preprinted papers with chemicals that may contaminate the paper
- Preprinted papers that can be affected by the temperature in the printer fuser
- Preprinted papers that require a registration (the precise location on the page) greater than ± 2.3 mm (± 0.9 in.), such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms. In some cases, registration can be adjusted with a software application to successfully print on these forms.)
- Coated papers (erasable bond), synthetic papers, thermal papers
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface papers or curled papers
- Recycled papers that fail EN12281:2002 (European testing)
- Paper weighing less than 60 g/m^2 (16 lb)
- Multiple part forms or documents

For more information about Lexmark, visit **www.lexmark.com**. General sustainability-related information can be found at the **Environmental Sustainability** link.

Storing paper

Use these paper storage guidelines to help avoid jams and uneven print quality:

- For best results, store paper where the temperature is 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40%. Most label manufacturers recommend printing in a temperature range of 18 to 24°C (65 to 75°F) with relative humidity between 40 and 60%.
- Store paper in cartons when possible, on a pallet or shelf, rather than on the floor.
- Store individual packages on a flat surface.
- Do not store anything on top of individual paper packages.

Supported paper sizes, types, and weights

The following tables provide information on standard and optional paper input sources and the types of paper they support.

Note: To use a paper size that is unlisted, configure a Universal Paper Size.

Supported paper sizes

Measurements apply to simplex (one-sided) printing only. For duplex (two-sided) printing, the minimum size is 139.7 x 210 mm (5.50 x 8.27 in.).

Paper size	Dimensions	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)	Optional 550-sheet tray	Optional 2,000-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	Duplexer
A4	210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
A5	148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in.)	✓	✓	**X**	✓	✓
A6	105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in.)	**X**	**X**	**X**	✓	**X**
JIS B5	182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.1 in.)	✓	✓	**X**	✓	✓
Letter	215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Legal	215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Executive	184.2 x 266.7 mm (7.25 x 10.5 in.)	✓	✓	**X**	✓	✓
Oficio (México)	215.9 x 340.4 mm (8.5 x 13.4 in.)	✓	✓	**X**	✓	✓

[1] Supported by X790 models only.

[2] This formats the envelope size setting for 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.) unless the size is specified by the software application.

Paper size	Dimensions	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)	Optional 550-sheet tray	Optional 2,000-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	Duplexer
Folio	215.9 x 330.2 mm (8.5 x 13 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
Statement	139.7 x 215.9 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
Universal **Note:** Turn size sensing off to support universal sizes that are close to standard media sizes.	148 x 210 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
	76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
	76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 215.9 x 914.4 mm (8.5 x 36 in.)[1]	X	X	X	✓	X
	76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 215.9 x 1219.2 mm (8.5 x 48 in.)[1]	X	X	X	✓	X
7 3/4 Envelope (Monarch)	98.4 x 190.5 mm (3.875 x 7.5 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
9 Envelope	98.4 x 226.1 mm (3.875 x 8.9 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
Com 10 Envelope	104.8 x 241.3 mm (4.12 x 9.5 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
DL Envelope	110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
C5 Envelope	162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9.01 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
B5 Envelope	176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
Other Envelope[2]	85.7 x 165 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (3.375 x 6.50 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X

[1] Supported by X790 models only.

[2] This formats the envelope size setting for 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.) unless the size is specified by the software application.

Supported paper types and weights

The printer supports 60–176 g/m^2 (16–47 lb) paper weights for one-sided printing. Two-sided printing is supported on 64–176 g/m^2 (17–47 lb) paper weights.

Note: Labels, transparencies, envelopes, and card stock always print at reduced speed.

Paper type	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)	Optional 550-sheet tray	Optional 2,000-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	Duplexer
Paper • Plain • Bond • Glossy • Colored • Custom Type [x] • Letterhead • Light • Heavy • Preprinted • Rough/Cotton • Recycled	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Card stock	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
Transparencies[1, 2]	X	X	X	✓	X
Labels[3] • Paper • Vinyl	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
Envelopes[4]	X	X	X	✓	X

[1] This media is not supported by the duplexer.

[2] Do not use inkjet or 3M CG3710 transparencies.

[3] Paper labels are supported. Other media such as vinyl may show print quality defects in some environments, and prolonged vinyl label usage may reduce fuser life. For more information, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* available on the Lexmark Web site at **http://support.lexmark.com**.

[4] Use envelopes that lie flat when individually placed facedown on a table.

Printing

This chapter covers printing, printer reports, and job cancelation. The selection and handling of paper and specialty media can affect how reliably documents print. For more information, see “Avoiding jams” on page 240 and “Storing paper” on page 76.

Printing a document

Printing a document

1. From the printer control panel Paper menu, set the Paper Type and Paper Size to match the loaded paper.
2. Send the print job:

For Windows users

a. With a document open, click **File** > **Print**.
b. Click **Properties**, **Preferences**, **Options**, or **Setup**.
c. Adjust settings as necessary.
d. Click **OK** > **Print**.

For Macintosh users

a. Customize the settings as needed in the Page Setup dialog:
   1. With a document open, choose **File** > **Page Setup**.
   2. Choose a paper size or create a custom size to match the loaded paper.
   3. Click **OK**.
b. Customize the settings as needed in the Print dialog:
   1. With a document open, choose **File** > **Print**.
      If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
   2. From the Print dialog and pop-up menus, adjust the settings as needed.

      Note: To print on a specific paper type, adjust the paper type setting to match the loaded paper, or select the appropriate tray or feeder.
   3. Click **Print**.

Printing on specialty media

Tips on using letterhead

- Use letterhead designed specifically for laser printers.
- Print samples on the letterhead being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Before loading letterhead, flex the sheets to prevent them from sticking together.

- Observe proper page orientation.

Source	Print side	Paper orientation
– Standard 550-sheet tray – Optional 550-sheet tray – Optional 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder	Preprinted letterhead design is placed faceup.	The top edge of the sheet with the logo is placed at the left side of the tray.
Duplex (two-sided) printing from trays	Preprinted letterhead design is placed facedown.	The top edge of the sheet with the logo is placed at the right side of the tray.
Multipurpose feeder (simplex printing)	Preprinted letterhead design is placed facedown.	The top edge of the sheet with the logo should enter the multipurpose feeder first.
Multipurpose feeder (duplex printing)	Preprinted letterhead design is placed faceup.	The top edge of the sheet with the logo should enter the multipurpose feeder last.
Note: Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether the chosen preprinted letterhead is acceptable for laser printers.		

Tips on using transparencies

- Print a test page on the transparencies being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Feed transparencies from the multipurpose feeder only.
- From the Paper menu, set the MP Feeder Type to Transparency.
- Use transparencies designed specifically for laser printers. Transparencies must be able to withstand temperatures of 230°C (446°F) without melting, discoloring, offsetting, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- To prevent print quality problems, avoid getting fingerprints on the transparencies.
- Before loading transparencies, flex the stack to prevent sheets from sticking together.
- We recommend Lexmark transparencies. For ordering information, see the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com**.

Tips on using envelopes

Print samples on the envelopes being considered for use before buying large quantities.

- Use envelopes designed specifically for laser printers. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to ensure that the envelopes can withstand temperatures up to 220°C (446°F) without sealing, wrinkling, curling excessively, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- For best performance, use envelopes made from 90-g/m^2 (24-lb bond) paper or 25% cotton. All-cotton envelopes must not exceed 70-g/m^2 (20-lb bond) weight.
- Use only new envelopes from undamaged packages.
- To optimize performance and minimize jams, do not use envelopes that:
  - Have excessive curl or twist.
  - Are stuck together or damaged in any way.
  - Have windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, or embossing.
  - Have metal clasps, string ties, or folding bars.

- Have an interlocking design.
- Have postage stamps attached.
- Have any exposed adhesive when the flap is in the sealed or closed position.
- Have bent corners.
- Have rough, cockle, or laid finishes.

- Adjust the width guides to fit the width of the envelopes.

Note: A combination of high humidity (over 60%) and high printing temperature may wrinkle or seal envelopes.

Tips on using labels

Print samples on the labels being considered for use before buying large quantities.

Note: Paper labels are supported. Other media such as vinyl may show print quality defects in some environments, and prolonged vinyl label usage may reduce fuser life.

For detailed information on label printing, characteristics, and design, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* available on the Lexmark Web site at **http://support.lexmark.com**.

When printing on labels:

- Use labels designed specifically for laser printers. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to verify that:
  - The labels can withstand temperatures up to 190°C (374°F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
  - Label adhesives, face sheet (printable stock), and topcoats can withstand up to 25 psi (172 kPa) pressure without delaminating, oozing around the edges, or releasing hazardous fumes.
- Do not use labels with slick backing material.
- Use full label sheets. Partial sheets may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a jam. Partial sheets also contaminate the printer and the cartridge with adhesive, and could void the printer and cartridge warranties.
- Do not use labels with exposed adhesive.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 in.) of the edge of the label, of the perforations, or between die-cuts of the label.
- Be sure adhesive backing does not reach to the sheet edge. Zone coating of the adhesive at least 1 mm (0.04 in.) away from edges is recommended. Adhesive material contaminates the printer and could void the warranty.
- If zone coating of the adhesive is not possible, remove a 1.6 mm (0.06 in.) strip on the leading and driver edge, and use a non-oozing adhesive.
- Portrait orientation works best, especially when printing bar codes.

Tips on using card stock

Card stock is heavy, single-ply specialty media. Many of its variable characteristics, such as moisture content, thickness, and texture, can significantly impact print quality. Print samples on the card stock being considered for use before buying large quantities.

When printing on card stock:

- Make sure the Paper Type is Card Stock.
- Select the appropriate Paper Texture setting.
- Be aware that preprinting, perforation, and creasing may significantly affect the print quality and cause jams or other paper-handling problems.

- Check with the manufacturer or vendor to ensure the card stock can withstand temperatures up to 190°C (374°F) without releasing hazardous emissions.
- Do not use preprinted card stock manufactured with chemicals that may contaminate the printer. Preprinting introduces semi-liquid and volatile components into the printer.
- Use grain short card stock when possible.

Printing confidential and other held jobs

Storing print jobs in the printer

You can set the printer to store print jobs in the printer memory until you start the print job from the printer control panel.

All print jobs that can be initiated by the user at the printer are called *held jobs*.

Note: Confidential, Verify, Reserve, and Repeat print jobs may be deleted if the printer requires extra memory to process additional held jobs.

Print job type	Description
Confidential	Confidential lets you hold print jobs in the computer until you enter the PIN from the control panel. **Note:** The PIN is set from the computer. It must be four digits, using the numbers 0–9.
Verify	Verify lets you print one copy of a print job while the printer holds the remaining copies. It allows you to examine if the first copy is satisfactory. The print job is automatically deleted from the printer memory once all copies are printed.
Reserve	Reserve allows the printer to store print jobs for printing at a later time. The print jobs are held until deleted from the Help Jobs menu.
Repeat	Repeat prints *and* stores print jobs in the printer memory for reprinting.

Printing confidential and other held jobs

Note: Confidential and Verify print jobs are automatically deleted from memory after printing. Repeat and Reserve jobs are held in the printer until you choose to delete them.

For Windows Users

1. With a document open, click **File** > **Print**, and then click **Properties**, **Preferences**, **Options**, or **Setup**.
2. Click **Other Options** > **Print and Hold**.
3. Select the print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
4. Click **OK** or **Print**.
5. Go to the printer to release the print job.

From the home screen:

- For confidential print jobs, navigate to:

  Held jobs > your user name > **Confidential Jobs** > your PIN > your print job name > number of copies > **Print**
- For other print jobs, navigate to:

  Held jobs > your user name > your print job name > number of copies > **Print**

For Macintosh users

1. With a document open, choose **File** > **Print**.

   If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
2. From the print options or Copies & Pages pop-up menu, choose **Job Routing**.
3. Select your print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
4. Click **OK** or **Print**.
5. Go to the printer to release the print job.

   From the home screen:

   - For confidential print jobs, navigate to:

     Held jobs > your user name > **Confidential Jobs** > your PIN > your print job name > number of copies > **Print**
   - For other print jobs, navigate to:

     Held jobs > your user name > your print job name > number of copies > **Print**

Supported flash drives and file types

Flash drive	File type
• Lexar JumpDrive 2.0 Pro (256MB, 512MB, or 1GB sizes) • SanDisk Cruzer Mini (256MB, 512MB, or 1GB sizes) **Notes:** • Hi-Speed USB flash drives must support the Full-Speed standard. Devices supporting only USB low-speed capabilities are not supported. • USB flash drives must support the FAT (*File Allocation Tables*) system. Devices formatted with NTFS (*New Technology File System*) or any other file system are not supported.	Documents: • .pdf • .pcx • .xps • .dcx Images: • .gif • .JPEG • .jpg • .bmp • .TIFF • .tif • .png

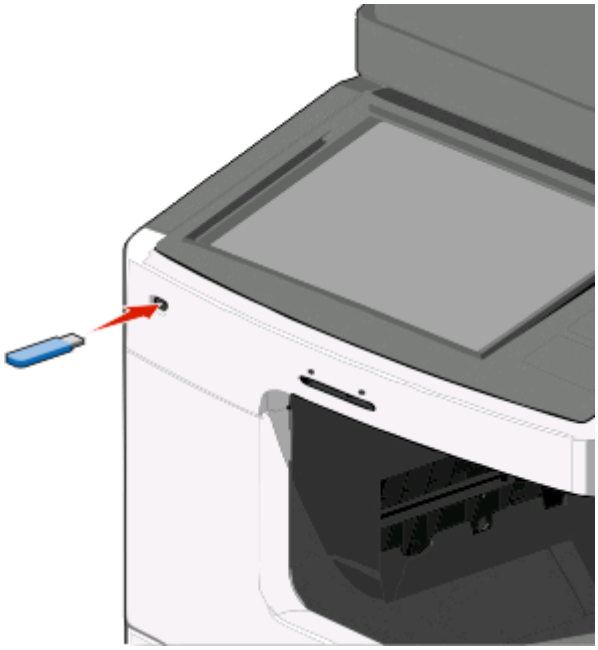
Printing from a flash drive

Notes:

- Before printing an encrypted PDF file, enter the file password from the printer control panel.
- You cannot print files for which you do not have printing permissions.

1 Insert a flash drive into the USB port.

The USB Drive home screen appears.



Notes:

- If you insert the flash drive when the printer requires attention, such as when a jam has occurred, then the printer ignores the flash drive.
- If you insert the flash drive while the printer is processing other print jobs, then **Busy** appears. After these print jobs are processed, you may need to view the held jobs list to print documents from the flash drive.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the USB cable, any network adapter, any connector, the memory device, or the printer in the areas shown while actively printing, reading, or writing from the memory device. A loss of data can occur.

2 From the printer control panel, touch **Print from USB**, and then select the document you want to print.

3 Touch the arrows to increase the number of copies to print, and then touch **Print**.

Notes:

- Do not remove the flash drive from the USB port until the document has finished printing.
- If you leave the flash drive in the printer after leaving the initial USB menu screen, then you can still print files from the flash drive as held jobs.

Printing information pages

Printing a font sample list

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

> **Reports** > **Print Fonts**

2 Touch **PCL Fonts** or **PostScript Fonts**.

Printing a directory list

A directory list shows the resources stored in a flash memory or on the printer hard disk.

From the home screen, navigate to:

> **Reports** > **Print Directory**

Printing print quality test pages

Print the print quality test pages to isolate print quality problems.

1. Turn the printer off.
2. Hold down 2 and 6 while turning the printer on.
3. Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears.
   The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.
4. Touch **Print Quality Pages Menu** > **Print Quality Pages**.
5. Touch **Exit Config Menu** to return to the home screen.

Printing in black and white

From the home screen, navigate to:

> **Settings** > **Print Settings** > **Quality Menu** > **Print Mode** > **Black Only** > **Submit**

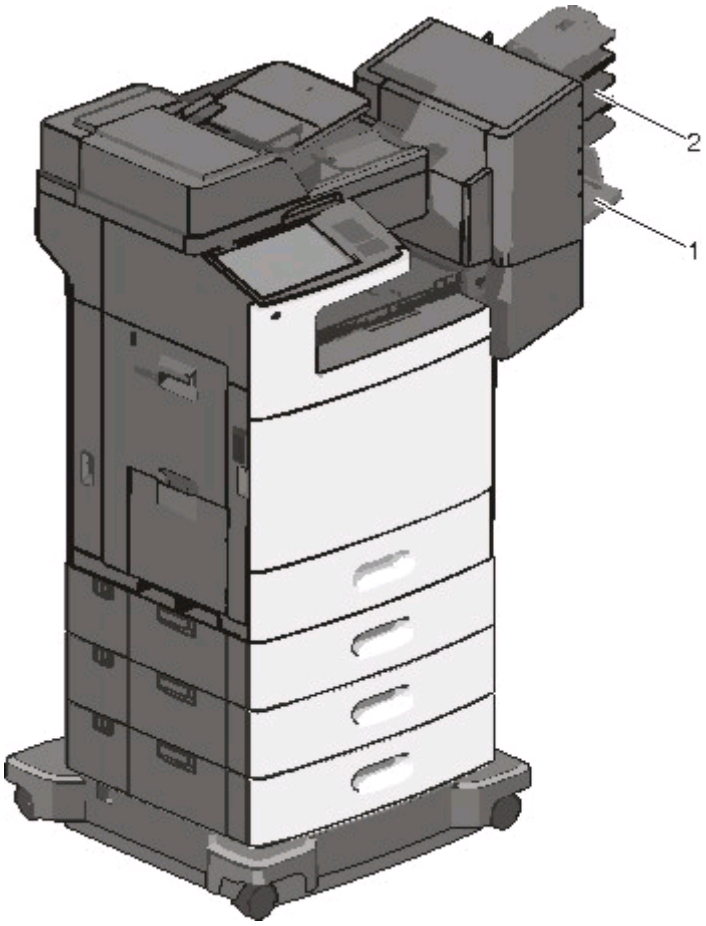
Adjusting toner darkness

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.
   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
2. Click **Settings** > **Print Settings** > **Quality Menu** > **Toner Darkness**.
3. Adjust the toner darkness setting.
4. Click **Submit**.

Supported finishing features

The printer supports the following finishing features:

- Stacker
- StapleSmart finisher
- Two-, Three-, or Four-hole punch
- 5-Bin mailbox



1	Standard bin
2	Finisher bin

Standard bin

- The paper capacity is 500 sheets.
- Finishing options are not supported in this bin.
- Envelopes are routed here.

Finisher bin

- The paper capacity is 500 sheets.
- Envelopes, A5, A6 and Statement paper are not supported in this bin.

Finishing features

Size	Two-hole punch	Three- or four-hole punch	5-bin Mailbox	StapleSmart Finisher
A4	✓	✓	✓	✓
A5	**X**	**X**	✓	**X**
Executive	✓	✓	✓	✓

Size	Two-hole punch	Three- or four-hole punch	5-bin Mailbox	StapleSmart Finisher
Folio	✓	**X**	✓	✓
JIS B5	✓	✓	✓	✓
Legal	✓	✓	✓	✓
Letter	✓	✓	✓	✓
Statement	**X**	**X**	✓	✓
Universal	**X**	**X**	✓	✓
Envelopes (any size)	**X**	**X**	✓	**X**
Oficio	✓	✓	✓	✓

Canceling a print job

Canceling a print job from the printer control panel

1. Touch **Cancel Jobs** on the touch screen, or press on the keypad.
2. Touch the job you want to cancel, and then touch **Delete Selected Jobs**.

Canceling a print job from the computer

For Windows users

1. Open the printers folder:
   a. Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
   b. In the Start Search or Run box, type `control printers`.
   c. Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.
2. Double-click the printer icon.
3. Select the print job you want to cancel.
4. From the keyboard, press **Delete**.

For Macintosh users

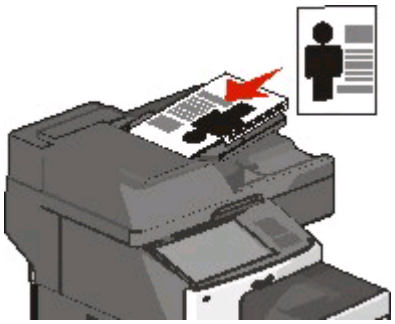
In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later:

1. From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences** > **Print & Fax** > **Open Print Queue**.
2. From the printer window, select the print job you want to cancel.
3. From the icon bar at the top of the window, click the **Delete** icon.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier:

1. From the Finder, navigate to:
   Go > **Applications**
2. Double-click **Utilities** > **Print Center** or **Printer Setup Utility**.
3. Double-click the printer icon.
4. From the printer window, select the print job you want to cancel.
5. From the icon bar at the top of the window, click the **Delete** icon.

Copying

ADF	Scanner glass
	
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

Making copies

Making a quick copy

1. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2. If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
3. From the printer control panel, touch **Copy It**.

Copying using the ADF

1. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2. Adjust the paper guides.
3. From the home screen, navigate to:

   Copy > change the copy settings > **Copy It**

Copying using the scanner glass

1. Place an original document facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.
2. From the home screen, navigate to:

   Copy > change the copy settings > **Copy It**
3. If you have more pages to scan, then place the next document on the scanner glass, and then touch **Scan the Next Page**.
4. Touch **Finish the Job** to return to the home screen.

Copying film photos

1. Place a photo facedown on the upper left corner of the scanner glass.
2. From the home screen, navigate to:

   Copy > **Content** > **Photo** > ✔ > **Photo/Film** > ✔ > **Copy It** > **Scan the Next Page** or **Finish the Job**

Copying on specialty media

Copying on transparencies

1. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.
2. If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
3. From the home screen, navigate to:

   Copy > **Copy from** > size of the original document > ✔
4. Touch **Copy to**, and then select the tray that contains transparencies, or touch **Manual Feeder Size**.
5. Load transparencies in the multipurpose feeder.
6. From the home screen, navigate to:

   ✔ > select the desired size of the transparencies > **Manual Feeder Type** > ✔ > **Copy It**

Copying on letterhead

1. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.
2. If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
3. From the home screen, navigate to:

   Copy > **Copy from** > size of the original document > **Copy to** > **Manual Feeder**

4 Place the letterhead faceup, top edge first in the multipurpose feeder.

5 Select the size of the letterhead.

6 Navigate to:

Continue > **Letterhead** > **Continue** > **Copy It**

Customizing copy settings

Copying in black and white

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > **Allow color copies** > **Off** > ✔ > **Submit**

Copying to a different size

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 Touch **Copy from** > select the size of the original document > ✔.

5 Touch **Copy to** > select the size of the copy > ✔.

Note: The printer will scale the size automatically.

6 Touch **Copy It**.

Making copies using paper from a selected tray

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > **Copy from** > size of the original document > **Copy to**

4 Touch **Manual Feeder** or select the tray that contains the paper type you want to use.

Note: If you choose Manual Feeder, then you will also need to select the paper size and type.

5 Touch **Copy It**.

Copying different paper sizes

Use the ADF to copy original documents with different paper sizes. Depending on the paper sizes loaded and the "Copy to" and "Copy from" settings, each copy is either printed on mixed paper sizes (Example 1) or scaled to fit a single paper size (Example 2).

Example 1: Copying on mixed paper sizes

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (sch as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > **Copy from** > **Auto Size Sense** > ✔ > **Copy to** > **Auto Size Match** > ✔ > **Copy It**

The scanner identifies the different paper sizes as they are scanned. Copies are printed on mixed paper sizes corresponding to the paper sizes of the original document.

Example 2: Copying on a single paper size

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > **Copy from** > **Mixed Sizes** > ✔ > **Copy to** > **Letter** > ✔ > **Copy It**

The scanner identifies the different paper sizes as they are scanned, and then scales the mixed paper sizes to fit on the paper size loaded in the printer.

Copying on both sides of the paper (duplexing)

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 From the Sides (Duplex) area, touch the button for your preferred duplexing method.

The first number represents sides of the original documents; the second number represents sides of the copy. For example, select 1-sided to 2-sided if you have 1-sided original documents and you want 2-sided copies.

5 Touch ✔, and then **Copy It**.

Reducing or enlarging copies

Copies can be reduced to 25% of the original document size or enlarged to 400% of the original document size. The factory default setting for Scale is Auto. If you leave Scale set to Auto, the content of your original document will be scaled to fit the size of the paper onto which you are copying.

To reduce or enlarge a copy:

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 On the home screen, touch **Copy**.

4 From the Scale area, touch the arrows to enlarge or reduce your copies.

Touching "Copy to" or "Copy from" after setting Scale manually changes the scale value back to Auto.

5 Touch **Copy It**.

Adjusting copy quality

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > **Content**

4 Touch the button that best represents the content type of the document you are copying:

- **Text**—Use when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Graphic**—Use when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Text/Photo**—Use when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.
- **Photo**—Use when the original document is mostly a photo or an image.

5 Touch ✔.

6 Touch the button that best represents the content source of the document you are copying:

- **Color Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Black/White**—Use when the original document was printed using a black/white laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—Use when the original document was printed using a inkjet printer.
- **Photo/Film**—Use when the original document is a photo from film.

- **Magazine**—Use when the original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—Use when the original document is from a newspaper.
- **Press**—Use when the original document was printed using a printing press.
- **Other**—Use when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

7 Touch ✓ > **Copy It**.

Collating copies

If you print multiple copies of a document, then you can choose to print each copy as a set (collated) or to print the copies as groups of pages (not collated).

Collated

Not collated

By default, Collate is set to On. If you do not want to collate your copies, then change the setting to Off:

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > enter the number of copies > **Collate** > **Off** > ✓ > **Copy It**

Placing separator sheets between copies

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Copy > **Advanced Options** > **Separator Sheets**

Note: Collate must be set to On for the separator sheets to be placed between copies. If Collate is set to Off, then the separator sheets are added to the end of the print job.

4 Select one of the following:
- **Between Copies**
- **Between Jobs**
- **Between Pages**
- **None**

5 Touch ✓, and then **Copy It**.

Copying multiple pages onto a single sheet

In order to save paper, you can copy either two or four consecutive pages of a multiple-page document onto a single sheet of paper.

Notes:

- The Paper Size must be set to Letter, Legal, A4, or JIS B5.
- The Copy Size must be set to 100%.

1. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2. If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
3. From the home screen, navigate to:

   Copy > **Advanced Options** > **Paper Saver** > select desired output > ✔ > **Copy It**

Creating a custom copy job (job build)

The custom copy job or job build is used to combine one or more sets of original documents into a single copy job. Each set may be scanned using different job parameters. When a copy job is submitted and Custom Job is enabled, the scanner scans the first set of original documents using the supplied parameters, and then it scans the next set with the same or different parameters.

The definition of a set depends on the scan source:

- If you scan a document on the scanner glass, then a set consists of one page.
- If you scan multiple pages using the ADF, then a set consists of all scanned pages until the ADF becomes empty.
- If you scan one page using the ADF, then a set consists of one page.

For example:

1. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2. If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
3. From the home screen, navigate to:

   Copy > **Options** > **Custom Job** > **On** > **Done** > **Copy It**

   When the end of a set is reached, the scan screen appears.

4. Load the next document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass, and then touch **Scan the Automatic Document Feeder** or **Scan the flatbed**.

   Note: If required, change the job settings.

5. If you have another document to scan, then repeat the previous step. Otherwise, touch **Finish the job**.

Placing information on copies

Placing the date and time at the top of each page

1. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2. If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
3. From the home screen, navigate to:

   Copy > **Advanced Options** > **Header/Footer**

4. Pick an area of the page where you want to place the date and time.
5. Touch **Yes** or **No** > ✔ > **Copy It**.

Placing an overlay message on each page

An overlay message can be placed on each page. The message choices are Urgent, Confidential, Copy, Custom or Draft. To place a message on the copies:

1. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2. If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
3. From the home screen, navigate to:

   Copy > **Advanced Options** > **Overlay** > select overlay message > ✔.

4. Touch **Copy It**.

Canceling a copy job

Canceling a copy job while the document is in the ADF

When the ADF begins processing a document, the scanning screen appears. To cancel the copy job, touch **Cancel Job** on the touch screen.

A "Canceling scan job" screen appears. The ADF clears all pages in the ADF and cancels the job.

Canceling a copy job while copying pages using the scanner glass

Touch **Cancel Job** on the touch screen.

A "Canceling scan job" screen appears. Once the job is canceled, the copy screen appears.

Canceling a copy job while pages are being printed

1. From the home screen, touch **Cancel Job**, or press on the keypad.
2. Touch the job you want to cancel.
3. Touch **Delete Selected Jobs**.

Understanding the copy screens and options

Copy from

This option opens a screen where you can enter the size of the documents you are going to copy.

- Touch a paper size button to select it as the "Copy from" setting. The copy screen appears with your new setting displayed.
- When "Copy from" is set to Mixed Letter/Legal, you can copy an original document that contains mixed paper sizes.
- When "Copy from" is set to Auto Size Sense, the scanner automatically determines the size of the original document.

Copy to

This option opens a screen where you can enter the size and type of paper on which your copies will be printed.

- Touch a paper size button to select it as the "Copy to" setting. The copy screen appears with your new setting displayed.
- If the size settings for "Copy from" and "Copy to" are different, the printer automatically adjusts the Scale setting to accommodate the difference.
- If the type or size of paper that you want to copy onto is not loaded in one of the trays, touch **Manual Feeder**, and manually send the paper through the multipurpose feeder.
- When "Copy to" is set to Auto Size Match, each copy matches the size of the original document. If a matching paper size is not in one of the trays, the printer scales each copy to fit loaded paper.

Copies

This option allows you to set the number of copies to be printed.

Scale

This option creates an image from your copy that is proportionally scaled anywhere between 25% and 400%. Scale can also be set for you automatically.

- When you want to copy from one size of paper to another, such as from legal-size to letter-size paper, setting the "Copy from" and "Copy to" paper sizes automatically changes the scale to keep all the original document information on your copy.
- Touch the left arrow to decrease the value by 1%; touch the right arrow to increase the value by 1%.
- Hold your finger on an arrow to make a continuous increment change.
- Hold your finger on an arrow for two seconds to cause the pace of the change to accelerate.

Darkness

This option adjusts how light or dark your copies will turn out in relation to the original document.

Sides (Duplex)

Use this option to select duplex settings. You can print copies on one or two sides, make two-sided copies (duplex) of two-sided original documents, make two-sided copies from one-sided original documents, or make one-sided copies (simplex) from two-sided original documents.

Collate

This option keeps the pages of a print job stacked in sequence when printing multiple copies of the document. The factory default setting for Collate is on; the output pages of your copies will be ordered (1,2,3) (1,2,3) (1,2,3). If you want all the copies of each page to remain together, turn Collate off, and your copies will be ordered (1,1,1) (2,2,2) (3,3,3).

Content

This option tells the printer the original document type and source.

Choose content type from Text, Text/Photo, Photo, or Graphic.

- **Text**—Use when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Graphic**—Use when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Text/Photo**—Use when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.
- **Photo**—Use when the original document is mostly a photo or an image.

Choose content source from Color Laser, Black/White Laser, Inkjet, Photo/Film, Magazine, Newspaper, Press or Other.

- **Color Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Black/White**—Use when the original document was printed using a black/white laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—Use when the original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
- **Photo/Film**—Use when the original document is a photo from film.
- **Magazine**—Use when the original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—Use when the original document is from a newspaper.
- **Press**—Use when the original document was printed using a printing press.
- **Other**—Use when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

Color

This option enables or disables color for the scanned image.

Advanced Options

Touching the Advanced Options button opens a screen where you can change Paper Saver, ADF Skew Fix, Advanced Imaging, Custom Job, Separator Sheets, Margin Shift, Edge Erase, Header/Footer, Overlay, and Advanced Duplex settings.

- **Paper Saver**—This lets you print two or more sheets of an original document together on the same page. Paper Saver is also called N-up printing. The N stands for Number. For example, 2-up would print two pages of your document on a single page, and 4-up would print four pages of your document on a single page. Touching Print Page Borders adds or removes the outline border surrounding the original document pages on the output page.
- **ADF Skew Fix**—This lets you correct slight skew in the scanned image.
- **Advanced Imaging**—Use to change or adjust Auto Center, Background Removal, Color Balance, Color Dropout, Contrast, Mirror Image, Negative Image, Scan Edge to Edge, Shadow Detail, Sharpness, and Temperature settings before you copy the document.
- **Custom Job**—This lets you combine multiple scanning jobs into a single job
- **Separator Sheets**—Use to place a blank piece of paper between copies, pages, or print jobs. The separator sheets can be drawn from a tray that contains a type or color of paper that is different from the paper your copies are printed on.
- **Margin Shift**—This lets you increase the size of the margin a specified distance by shifting the scanned image. This can be useful in providing space to bind or hole-punch copies. Use the increase or decrease arrows to set how much of a margin you want. If the additional margin is too large, then the copy will be cropped.
- **Edge Erase**—This lets you eliminate smudges or information around the edges of a document. You can choose to eliminate an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or pick a particular edge. Edge Erase will erase whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scan.
- **Header/Footer**—This allows you to turn on the Date/Time, Page number, Bates number, or Custom text and prints them in the specified header or footer location.
- **Overlay**—This lets you create a watermark (or message) that overlays the content of your copy. You can choose between Urgent, Confidential, Copy, and Draft, or you can enter a custom message in the "Enter custom text" field. The word you pick will appear, faintly, in large print across each page.

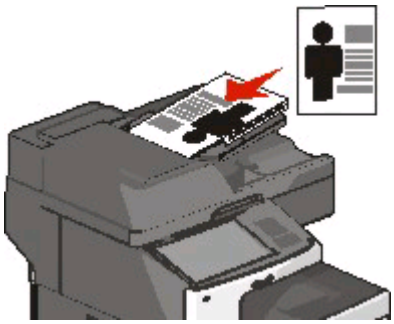
  Note: A custom overlay can also be created by your system support person. When a custom overlay is created, a button with an icon of that overlay will be available.
- **Advanced Duplex**—This lets you control whether the documents are one-sided or two-sided, what orientation your original documents have, and how your documents are bound.

  Note: Some Advanced Duplex options may not be available on all printer models.

Save As Shortcut

This option allows the current settings to be saved as a shortcut by assigning a number.

E-mailing

ADF	Scanner glass
	
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

You can use the printer to e-mail scanned documents to one or more recipients. There are three ways to send an e-mail from the printer. You can type the e-mail address, use a shortcut number, or use the address book.

Getting ready to e-mail

Setting up the e-mail function

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
2. Click **Settings**.
3. Under Default Settings, click **E-mail/FTP Settings**.
4. Click **E-mail Settings** > **Setup E-mail Server**.
5. Fill in the fields with the appropriate information.
6. Click **Submit**.

Configuring e-mail settings

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings** > **E-mail/FTP Settings** > **E-mail Settings**.

3 Fill in the fields with the appropriate information.

4 Click **Submit**.

Creating an e-mail shortcut

Creating an e-mail shortcut using the Embedded Web Server

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Under Other Settings, click **Manage Shortcuts** > **E-mail Shortcut Setup**.

4 Type a unique name for the recipient, and then enter the e-mail address.

Note: If you are entering multiple addresses, then separate each address with a comma (,).

5 Select the scan settings (Format, Content, Color, and Resolution).

6 Enter a shortcut number, and then click **Add**.

If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

Creating an e-mail shortcut using the touch screen

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

E-mail > **Recipient** > type an e-mail address

To create a group of recipients, touch **Next address**, and then type the next recipient's e-mail address.

2 Touch .

3 Type a unique name for the shortcut, and then touch **Done**.

4 Verify that the shortcut name and number are correct, and then touch **OK**.

If the name or number is incorrect, then touch **Cancel**, and then reenter the information.

E-mailing a document

Sending an e-mail using the touch screen

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, touch **E-mail** > **Recipient**.

4 Enter the e-mail address, or press # and then enter the shortcut number.

To enter additional recipients, touch **Next Address**, and then enter the address or shortcut number you want to add.

Note: You can also enter an e-mail address using the address book. For more information, see "Using the address book" on page 116.

5 Touch **Done** > **Email It**.

Sending an e-mail using a shortcut number

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 Press #, enter the shortcut number using the keypad, and then touch ✓.

To enter additional recipients, touch **Next address**, and then enter the address or shortcut number you want to add.

4 Touch **E-mail It**.

Using the address book

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

E-mail >**Recipient(s)** > > enter the name of recipient > **Browse shortcuts**

4 Touch the name of the recipients.

To enter additional recipients, touch **Next address**, and then enter the address or shortcut number you want to add, or search the address book.

5 Touch **Done**.

Customizing e-mail settings

Adding e-mail subject and message information

1. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2. If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
3. From the home screen, touch **E-mail**.
4. Type an e-mail address.
5. Touch **Options** > **Subject**.
6. Type the e-mail subject.
7. Touch **Done** > **Message**.
8. Type an e-mail message.
9. Touch **Done** > **E-mail It**.

Changing the output file type

1. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2. If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
3. From the home screen, navigate to:

   E-mail > **Recipient** > type an e-mail address > **Send as**

4. Touch the button that represents the file type you want to send.
   - **PDF**—Use this to create a single file with multiple pages, viewable with Adobe Reader. Adobe Reader is provided free by Adobe at www.adobe.com.
   - **Secure PDF**—Use this to create an encrypted PDF file that protects the file contents from unauthorized access.
   - **TIFF**—Use this to create multiple files or a single file. If Multi-page TIFF is turned off in the Settings menu of the Embedded Web Server, then TIFF saves one page in each file. The file size is usually larger than an equivalent JPEG.
   - **JPEG**—Use this to create and attach a separate file for each page of your original document, viewable by most Web browsers and graphics programs.
   - **XPS**—Use this to create a single XML Paper Specification (XPS) file with multiple pages, viewable using an Internet Explorer-hosted viewer and the .NET Framework, or by downloading a third-party standalone viewer.
5. Touch **E-mail It**.

   Note: If you selected Secure PDF, you will be prompted to enter your password twice.

Canceling an e-mail

- When using the ADF, touch **Cancel Job** while **Scanning...** appears.
- When using the scanner glass, touch **Cancel Job** while **Scanning...** appears or while **Scan the Next Page** / **Finish the Job** appears.

Understanding e-mail options

Recipients

This option lets you enter the destination of your e-mail. You may enter multiple e-mail addresses.

Subject

This option lets you enter a subject line for your e-mail.

Message

This option lets you enter a message that will be sent with your scanned attachment.

File Name

This option lets you customize the attachment file name.

Original Size

This option opens a screen where you can choose the size of the documents you are going to e-mail.

- Touch a paper size button to select that size as the Original Size setting. The e-mail screen appears with your new setting displayed.
- When "Original Size" is set to Mixed Letter/Legal, you can scan an original document that contains mixed paper sizes.
- When "Original Size" is set to Auto Size Sense, the scanner automatically determines the size of the original document.

Resolution

Adjusts the output quality of your e-mail. Increasing the image resolution increases the e-mail file size and the time needed to scan your original document. Image resolution can be decreased to reduce the e-mail file size.

Color

This option sets the output color for the scanned image. Touch to enable or disable color.

Content

This option tells the printer the original document type and source.

Choose content type from Text, Text/Photo, Photo, or Graphic.

- **Text**—Use when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Graphic**—Use when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Text/Photo**—Use when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.
- **Photo**—Use when the original document is mostly a photo or an image.

Choose content source from Color Laser, Black/White Laser, Inkjet, Photo/Film, Magazine, Newspaper, Press or Other.

- **Color Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Black/White**—Use when the original document was printed using a black/white laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—Use when the original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
- **Photo/Film**—Use when the original document is a photo from film.
- **Magazine**—Use when the original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—Use when the original document is from a newspaper.
- **Press**—Use when the original document was printed using a printing press.
- **Other**—Use when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

Darkness

This option adjusts how light or dark your scanned documents will turn out in relation to the original document.

Send As

This option sets the output (PDF, TIFF, JPEG or XPS) for the scanned image.

- **PDF**—Creates a single file with multiple pages, viewable with Adobe Reader. Adobe Reader is provided free by Adobe at www.adobe.com.
- **Secure PDF**—Creates an encrypted PDF file that protects the file contents from unauthorized access
- **TIFF**—Creates multiple files or a single file. If Multi-page TIFF is turned off in the Settings menu of the Embedded Web Server, then TIFF saves one page in each file. The file size is usually larger than an equivalent JPEG.
- **JPEG**—Creates and attaches a separate file for each page of your original document, viewable by most Web browsers and graphics programs
- **XPS**—Creates a single XPS file with multiple pages, viewable using an Internet Explorer-hosted viewer and the .NET Framework, or by downloading a third party standalone viewer

Page Setup

This option lets you change the Sides (Duplex), Orientation, and Binding.

- **Sides (Duplex)**— Specifies if the original document is simplex (printed on one page) or duplex (printed on both sides). This also identifies what needs to be scanned for inclusion in the e-mail.
- **Orientation**— Specifies the orientation of the original document, and then changes **Sides** and **Binding** to match the orientation.
- **Binding**— Specifies if the original document is bound on the long-edge or short-edge side.

Scan Preview

This option displays the first page of the image before it is included in the e-mail. When the first page is scanned, the scanning is paused and a preview image appears.

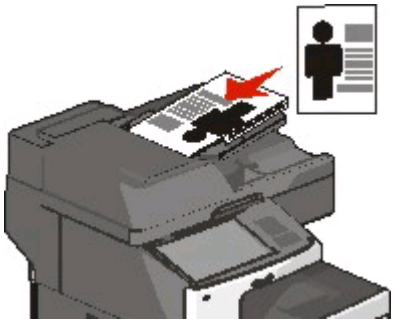
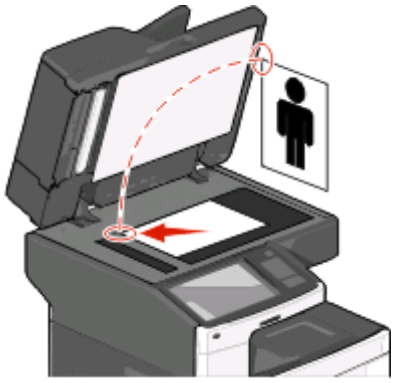
Advanced Options

Touching this button opens a screen where you can change ADF Skew Fix, Advanced Imaging, Custom Job, Edge Erase, and Transmission Log settings.

- **ADF Skew Fix**—This lets you correct slight skew in the scanned image.
- **Advanced Imaging**—This lets you adjust the Background Removal, Color Balance, Color Dropout, Contrast, JPEG Quality, Mirror Image, Negative Image, Scan Edge to Edge, Shadow Detail, Sharpness, and Temperature settings before you e-mail the document.
- **Custom Job**—This lets you combine multiple scanning jobs into a single job
- **Edge Erase**—This lets you eliminate smudges or information around the edges of a document. You can choose to eliminate an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or pick a particular edge. Edge Erase will erase whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scan.
- **Transmission Log**—This lets you print the transmission log or transmission error log

Faxing

Note: Fax capabilities may not be available on all printer models.

ADF	Scanner glass
	
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

Getting the printer ready to fax

The following connection methods may not be applicable in all countries or regions.

Note: During the initial printer setup, deselect Fax and any other function you plan to set up later, and then touch **Continue**. The indicator light may blink red if the fax function is enabled and not fully set up.

CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch cables or the printer in the area shown while actively sending or receiving a fax.

Initial fax setup

Many countries and regions require outgoing faxes to contain the following information in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page, or on the first page of the transmission: station name (identification of the business, other entity, or individual sending the message) and station number (telephone number of the sending fax machine, business, other entity, or individual).

To enter your fax setup information, use the printer control panel, or use your browser to access the Embedded Web Server and then enter the Settings menu.

Note: If you do not have a TCP/IP environment, then you must use the printer control panel to enter your fax setup information.

Using the printer control panel for fax setup

When the printer is turned on for the first time or if the printer has been off for an extended time, a series of start-up screens appear. If the printer has fax capabilities, then the following screens appear:

Fax Name or Station Name

Fax Number or Station Number

1. When **`Fax Name`** or **`Station Name`** appears, enter the name to be printed on all outgoing faxes.
2. After entering the Fax Name or Station Name, touch **Submit**.
3. When **`Fax Number`** or **`Station Number`** appears, enter the printer fax number.
4. After entering the Fax Number or Station Number, touch **Submit**.

Using the Embedded Web Server for fax setup

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
2. Click **Settings** > **Fax Settings** > **Analog Fax Setup**.
3. In the Fax Name or Station Name field, enter the name to be printed on all outgoing faxes.
4. In the Fax Number or Station Number field, enter the printer fax number.
5. Click **Submit**.

Choosing a fax connection

You can connect the printer with equipment such as a telephone, an answering machine, or a computer modem. To determine the best way to set up the printer, see the following table.

Notes:

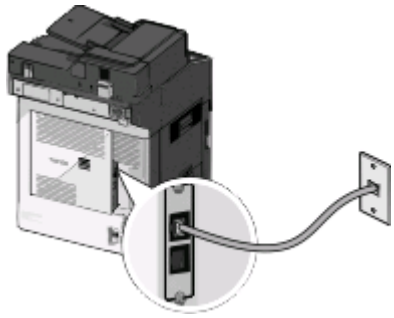
- The printer is an analog device that works best when directly connected to the wall outlet. Other equipment (such as a telephone or answering machine) can be successfully attached to pass through the printer, as described in the setup steps.
- If you want a digital connection such as ISDN, DSL, or ADSL, then a third-party device (such as a DSL filter) is required. Contact your DSL provider for a DSL filter. The DSL filter removes the digital signal on the telephone line that can interfere with the ability of the printer to fax properly.
- You *do not* need to attach the printer to a computer, but you *do* need to connect it to an analog telephone line to send and receive faxes.

Equipment and service options	Fax connection setup
Connect directly to the telephone line	See "Connecting to an analog telephone line" on page 110.
Connect to a Digital Subscriber Line (DSL or ADSL) service	See "Connecting to a DSL service" on page 110.
Connect to a Private Branch eXchange (PBX) or Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) system	See "Connecting to a PBX or ISDN system" on page 111.
Use a Distinctive Ring service	See "Connecting to a distinctive ring service" on page 112.
Connect through an adapter used in your area	See "Connecting to an adapter for your country or region" on page 112.

Connecting to an analog telephone line

If your telecommunications equipment uses a US-style (RJ11) telephone line, then follow these steps to connect the equipment:

1. Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port .
2. Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog telephone wall jack.



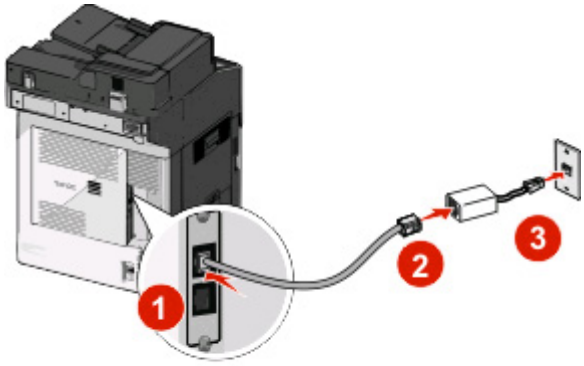
Connecting to a DSL service

If you subscribe to a DSL service, then contact the DSL provider to obtain a DSL filter and telephone cord, and then follow these steps to connect the equipment:

1. Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port .
2. Connect the other end of the telephone cable to the DSL filter.

   Note: Your DSL filter may look different than the one in the illustration.

3 Connect the DSL filter cable to an active telephone wall jack.



Connecting to a PBX or ISDN system

If you use a PBX or ISDN converter or terminal adapter, then follow these steps to connect the equipment:

1 Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port .

2 Connect the other end of the telephone cable to the port designated for fax and telephone use.

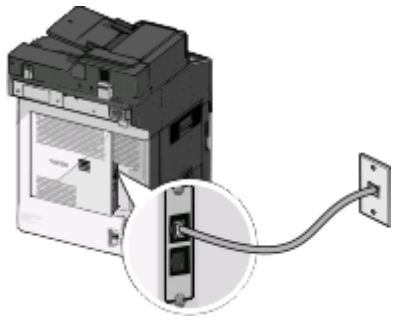
Notes:

- Make sure the terminal adapter is set to the correct switch type for your region.
- Depending on the ISDN port assignment, you may have to connect to a specific port.
- When using a PBX system, make sure the call waiting tone is off.
- When using a PBX system, dial the outside line prefix before dialing the fax number.
- For more information on using the fax with a PBX system, see the documentation that came with your PBX system.

Connecting to a distinctive ring service

A distinctive ring service may be available from your telephone service provider. This service allows you to have multiple telephone numbers on one telephone line, with each telephone number having a different ring pattern. This may be useful for distinguishing between fax and voice calls. If you subscribe to a distinctive ring service, then follow these steps to connect the equipment:

1. Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port .
2. Connect the other end of the telephone cable to an active analog telephone wall jack.



3. Change the Distinctive Rings setting to match the setting you want for the printer to answer:

   Note: The factory default setting for distinctive rings is **On**. This allows the printer to answer single, double, and triple ring patterns.

   a. From the home screen, navigate to:

   > **Settings** > **Fax Settings** > **Analog Fax Settings** > **Distinctive Rings**

   b. Select the pattern setting you want to change, and then touch **Submit**.

Connecting to an adapter for your country or region

The following countries or regions may require a special adapter to connect the telephone cable to the active telephone wall jack:

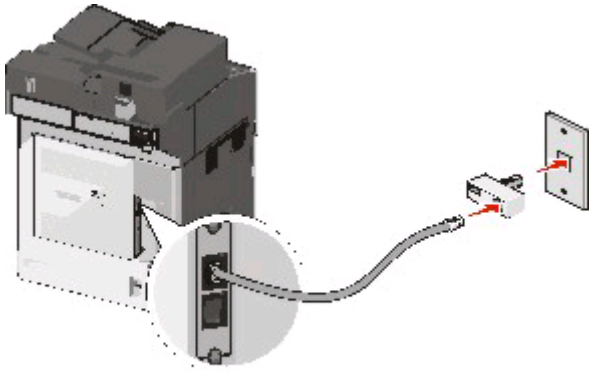
Country/Region

- Austria
- Cyprus
- Denmark
- Finland
- France
- Germany
- Ireland
- Italy
- New Zealand
- Netherlands
- Norway
- Portugal
- Sweden
- Switzerland
- United Kingdom

For some countries or regions, a telephone line adapter is included in the box. Use this adapter to connect an answering machine, telephone, or other telecommunications equipment to the printer.

1. Connect one end of the telephone cable that came with the printer to the printer LINE port
2. Connect the other end of the telephone cable to the adapter, and then connect the adapter to the active telephone wall jack.

   Note: Your telephone adapter may look different than the one shown. It will fit the wall jack used in your location.



Setting the outgoing fax or station name and number

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
2. Click **Settings** > **Fax Settings** > **Analog Fax Setup**.
3. In the Fax Name or Station Name field, enter the name to be printed on all outgoing faxes.
4. In the Fax Number or Station Number field, enter the printer fax number.
5. Click **Submit**.

Setting the date and time

You can set the date and time so that they are printed on every fax you send. If there is a power failure, then you may have to reset the date and time.

1. Type the printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
2. Click **Security** > **Set Date and Time**.

3 In the Set Date & Time field, enter the current date and time.

4 Click **Submit**.

Note: It is recommended to use the network time.

Configuring the printer to observe daylight saving time

The printer can be set to automatically adjust for daylight saving time:

1 Type the printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Security** > **Set Date and Time**.

3 Select the **Automatically Observe DST** checkbox, and then enter the DST start and end dates in the Custom Time Zone Setup section.

4 Click **Submit**.

Sending a fax

Sending a fax using the touch screen

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, touch **Fax**.

4 Enter the fax number or a shortcut using the touch screen or keypad.

To add recipients, touch **Next Number** and then enter the recipient's telephone number or shortcut number, or search the address book.

Note: To place a dial pause within a fax number, press . The dial pause appears as a comma in the "Fax to" box. Use this feature if you need to dial an outside line first.

5 Touch **Fax It**.

Sending a fax using the computer

Faxing from a computer lets you send electronic documents without leaving your desk. This gives you the flexibility of faxing documents directly from software programs.

Note: In order to perform this function from your computer, you must use the PostScript printer driver for your printer.

1 From your software program, click **File** > **Print**.

2 From the Print window, select your printer, and then click **Properties** > **Other Options** > **Fax** > **OK** > **OK**.

3 On the Fax screen, enter the name and number of the fax recipient.

4 Click **Send**.

Creating shortcuts

Creating a fax destination shortcut using the Embedded Web Server

Instead of entering the entire phone number of a fax recipient on the printer control panel each time you want to send a fax, you can create a permanent fax destination and assign a shortcut number. A shortcut can be created to a single fax number or a group of fax numbers.

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings** > **Manage Shortcuts** > **Fax Shortcut Setup**.

Note: A password may be required. If you do not have an ID and password, get one from your system support person.

3 Type a unique name for the shortcut, and then enter the fax number.

To create a multiple-number shortcut, enter the fax numbers for the group.

Note: Separate each fax number in the group with a semicolon (;).

4 Assign a shortcut number.

If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

5 Click **Add**.

Creating a fax destination shortcut using the touch screen

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Fax > enter the fax number

To create a group of fax numbers, touch **Next number**, and then enter the next fax number.

4 Navigate to:

> enter a name for the shortcut > **Done** > **OK** > **Fax It**

Using shortcuts and the address book

Using fax shortcuts

Fax shortcuts are just like the speed dial numbers on a telephone or fax machine. You can assign shortcut numbers when creating permanent fax destinations. Permanent fax destinations or speed dial numbers are created in the Manage Shortcuts link located under Settings on the Embedded Web Server. A shortcut number (1–99999) can contain a single recipient or multiple recipients. By creating a group fax shortcut with a shortcut number, you can quickly and easily fax broadcast information to an entire group.

1. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not place postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2. If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
3. Press #, and then enter the shortcut number using the keypad.

Using the address book

The address book enables you to search for bookmarks and network directory servers.

Note: If the address book feature is not enabled, then contact your system support person.

1. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2. If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
3. From the home screen, navigate to:

   Fax > > **Browse shortcuts**

4. Using the virtual keyboard, type the name or part of the name of the person whose fax number you want to find.

   Note: Do not attempt to search for multiple names at the same time.

5. Touch **Done** > **Fax It**.

Customizing fax settings

Changing the fax resolution

Settings range from Standard (fastest speed) to Ultra Fine (slowest speed, best quality).

1. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2. If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Fax > enter the fax number > **Options**

4 From the Resolution area, touch the arrows to change to the resolution you want.

5 Touch **Fax It**.

Making a fax lighter or darker

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Fax > enter the fax number > **Options**

4 From the Darkness area, touch the arrows to adjust the darkness of the fax.

5 Touch **Fax It**.

Sending a fax at a scheduled time

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

Fax > enter the fax number > **Options** > **Advanced Options** > **Delayed Send**

Note: If Fax Mode is set to Fax Server, the Delayed Send button will not appear. Faxes waiting for transmission are listed in the Fax Queue.

4 Touch the arrows to adjust the time the fax will be transmitted.

The time is increased or decreased in increments of 30 minutes. If the current time is shown, the left arrow is unavailable.

5 Touch **Fax It**.

Note: The document is scanned and then faxed at the scheduled time.

Viewing a fax log

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings** > **Reports** > **Fax Job Log** or **Fax Call Log**.

Blocking junk faxes

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings** > **Fax Settings** > **Analog Fax Setup** > **Block No Name Fax**.

Notes:

- This option blocks all incoming faxes that have a private caller ID or no fax station name.
- In the Banned Fax List field, enter the phone numbers or fax station names of specific fax callers you want to block.

Canceling an outgoing fax

Canceling a fax while the original documents are still scanning

- When using the ADF, touch **Cancel Job** while `Scanning...` appears.
- When using the scanner glass, touch **Cancel Job** while `Scanning...` appears or while `Scan the Next Page` / `Finish the Job` appears.

Canceling a fax after the original documents have been scanned to memory

1 On the home screen, touch **Cancel Jobs**.

The Cancel Jobs screen appears.

2 Touch the job or jobs you want to cancel.

Only three jobs appear on the screen; touch the down arrow until the job you want appears, and then touch the job you want to cancel.

3 Touch **Delete Selected Jobs**.

The Deleting Selected Jobs screen appears, the selected jobs are deleted, and then the home screen appears.

Understanding fax options

Content

This option tells the printer the original document type and source.

Choose content type from Text, Text/Photo, Photo, or Graphic.

- **Text**—Use when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Graphic**—Use when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.

- **Text/Photo**—Use when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.
- **Photo**—Use when the original document is mostly a photo or an image.

Choose content source from Color Laser, Black/White Laser, Inkjet, Photo/Film, Magazine, Newspaper, Press or Other.

- **Color Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Black/White**—Use when the original document was printed using a black/white laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—Use when the original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
- **Photo/Film**—Use when the original document is a photo from film.
- **Magazine**—Use when the original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—Use when the original document is from a newspaper.
- **Press**—Use when the original document was printed using a printing press.
- **Other**—Use when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

Resolution

This options increases how closely the scanner examines the document you want to fax. If you are faxing a photo, a drawing with fine lines, or a document with very small text, increase the Resolution setting. This will increase the amount of time required for the scan and will increase the quality of the fax output.

- **Standard**—Suitable for most documents
- **Fine**—Recommended for documents with small print
- **Super fine**—Recommended for original documents with fine detail
- **Ultra fine**—Recommended for documents with pictures or photos

Darkness

This option adjusts how light or dark your faxes will turn out in relation to the original document.

Color

This option enables or disables color in faxing.

Page Setup

This option lets you change the Sides (Duplex), Orientation, and Binding.

- **Sides (Duplex)**— Specifies if the original document is simplex (printed on one page) or duplex (printed on both sides). This also identifies what needs to be scanned for inclusion in the fax.
- **Orientation**— Specifies the orientation of the original document, and then changes **Sides** and **Binding** to match the orientation.
- **Binding**— Specifies if the original document is bound on the long-edge or short-edge side.

Scan Preview

This option displays the first page of the image before it is included in the fax. When the first page is scanned, the scanning is paused and a preview image appears.

Advanced Options

Touching this button lets you change Delayed Send, Advanced Imaging, Custom Job, Transmission Log, Edge Erase and ADF Skew Fix settings.

- **Delayed Send**—This lets you send a fax at a later time or date. After setting up your fax, touch **Delayed Send**, enter the time and date you would like to send your fax, and then touch **Done**. This setting can be especially useful in sending information to fax lines that are not readily available during certain hours, or when transmission times are cheaper.

  Note: If the printer is turned off when the delayed fax is scheduled to be sent, the fax is sent the next time the printer is turned on.
- **Advanced Imaging**—This lets you adjust the Background Removal, Contrast, Color Balance, Negative Image, Mirror Image, Scan Edge to Edge, Shadow Detail, Sharpness, and Temperature settings before you fax the document.
- **Custom Job (Job Build)**—This lets you combine multiple scanning jobs into a single job.
- **Transmission Log**—This lets you print the transmission log or transmission error log.
- **Edge Erase**—This lets you eliminate smudges or information around the edges of a document. You can choose to eliminate an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or pick a particular edge. Edge Erase will erase whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scan.
- **ADF Skew Fix**—This lets you correct slight skew in the scanned image.

Holding and forwarding faxes

Holding faxes

This option lets you hold received faxes from printing until they are released. Held faxes can be released manually or at a scheduled day or time.

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
2. Click **Settings** > **Fax Settings** > **Analog Fax Setup** > **Holding Faxes**.
3. In the Print Faxes Password field, enter a password.
4. From the Held Fax Mode menu, select one of the following:
   - **Off**
   - **Always On**
   - **Manual**
   - **Scheduled**
5. If you selected Scheduled, then continue with the following steps:
   a. Click **Fax Holding Schedule**.
   b. From the Action menu, select **Hold faxes**.

c From the Time menu, select the time you want the held faxes released.

d From the Day(s) menu, select the day you want the held faxes released.

6 Click **Add**.

Forwarding a fax

This option lets you print and forward received faxes to a fax number, e-mail address, FTP site, or LDSS.

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings** > **Fax Settings**.

3 From the Fax Forwarding menu, select one of the following:

- **Print**
- **Print and Forward**
- **Forward**

4 From the "Forward to" menu, select one of the following:

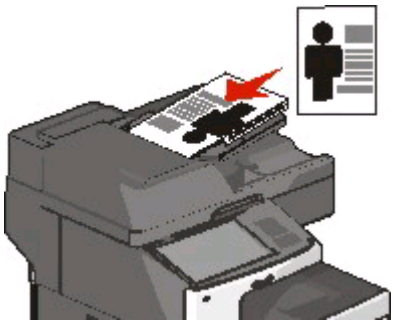
- **Fax**
- **E-mail**
- **FTP**
- **LDSS**
- **eSF**

5 In the Forward to Shortcut field, enter the shortcut number where you want the fax forwarded.

Note: The shortcut number must be valid for the setting selected in the "Forward to" menu.

6 Click **Submit**.

Scanning to an FTP address

ADF	Scanner glass
	
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

The scanner lets you scan documents directly to a *File Transfer Protocol (FTP)* server. Only one FTP address may be sent to the server at a time.

Once an FTP destination has been configured by your system support person, the name of the destination becomes available as a shortcut number. An FTP destination could also be another printer; for example, a color document can be scanned and then sent to a color printer.

Scanning to an FTP address

Scanning to an FTP address using the touch screen

1. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2. If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.
3. From the home screen, navigate to:

   FTP > **FTP** > type the FTP address > **Send It**

Scanning to an FTP address using a shortcut number

1. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

   Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2. If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 Press #, and then enter the FTP shortcut number.

4 Touch **Send It**.

Scanning to an FTP address using the address book

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, adjust the paper guides.

3 From the home screen, navigate to:

FTP > **FTP** > > enter the name of recipient > **Browse shortcuts** > name of recipient > **Done**

Creating shortcuts

Instead of entering the entire FTP site address on the printer control panel each time you want to send a document to an FTP server, you can create a permanent FTP destination and assign a shortcut number. There are two methods for creating shortcut numbers: using a computer or using the printer touch screen.

Creating an FTP shortcut using the Embedded Web Server

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings**.

3 Under Other Settings, click **Manage Shortcuts**.

Note: A password may be required. If you do not have an ID and password, get one from your system support person.

4 Click **FTP Shortcut Setup**.

5 Enter the appropriate information.

6 Enter a shortcut number.

If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

7 Click **Add**.

Creating an FTP shortcut using the touch screen

1. From the home screen, navigate to:

   FTP > type the FTP address > > enter a name for the shortcut > **Done**

2. Verify that the shortcut name and number are correct, and then touch **OK**. If the name or number is incorrect, then touch **Cancel**, and then reenter the information.

   If you enter a number that is already in use, then you are prompted to select another number.

3. Touch **Submit**.

Understanding FTP options

FTP

This option lets you enter the IP address for the FTP destination.

Note: Addresses should be in dot notation form (for example: `yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy`).

File Name

This option lets you enter the file name of the scanned document.

Original Size

This option opens a screen where you can choose the size of the documents you are going to copy.

- Touch a paper size button to select that size as the Original Size setting. The FTP screen appears with your new setting displayed.
- When "Original Size" is set to Mixed Letter/Legal, you can scan an original document that contains mixed paper sizes.
- When "Original Size" is set to Auto Size Sense, the scanner automatically determines the size of the original document.

Send As

This option sets the output (PDF, TIFF, JPEG or XPS) for the scanned image.

- **PDF**—Creates a single file with multiple pages, viewable with Adobe Reader. Adobe Reader is provided free by Adobe at www.adobe.com.
- **Secure PDF**—Creates an encrypted PDF file that protects the file contents from unauthorized access
- **TIFF**—Creates multiple files or a single file. If Multi-page TIFF is turned off in the Settings menu of the Embedded Web Server, then TIFF saves one page in each file. The file size is usually larger than an equivalent JPEG.
- **JPEG**—Creates and attaches a separate file for each page of your original document, viewable by most Web browsers and graphics programs
- **XPS**—Creates a single XPS file with multiple pages, viewable using an Internet Explorer-hosted viewer and the .NET Framework, or by downloading a third party standalone viewer

Color

This option enables or disables color for the scanned image.

Resolution

This option adjusts the output quality of your file. Increasing the image resolution increases the file size and the time needed to scan your original document. Image resolution can be decreased to reduce the file size.

Page Setup

This option lets you change the Sides (Duplex), Orientation, and Binding.

- **Sides (Duplex)**— Specifies if the original document is simplex (printed on one page) or duplex (printed on both sides). This also identifies what needs to be scanned.
- **Orientation**— Specifies the orientation of the original document, and then changes the Sides and Binding settings to match the orientation.
- **Binding**— Specifies if the original document is bound on the long-edge or short-edge side.

Content

This option tells the printer the original document type and source.

Choose content type from Text, Text/Photo, Photo, or Graphic.

- **Text**—Use when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Graphic**—Use when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Text/Photo**—Use when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.
- **Photo**—Use when the original document is mostly a photo or an image.

Choose content source from Color Laser, Black/White Laser, Inkjet, Photo/Film, Magazine, Newspaper, Press or Other.

- **Color Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Black/White**—Use when the original document was printed using a black/white laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—Use when the original document was printed using an inkjet printer.
- **Photo/Film**—Use when the original document is a photo from film.
- **Magazine**—Use when the original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—Use when the original document is from a newspaper.
- **Press**—Use when the original document was printed using a printing press.
- **Other**—Use when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

Scan Preview

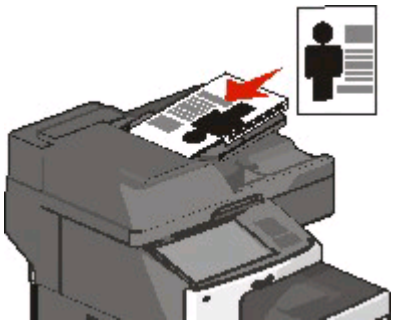
This option displays the first page of the original document before it is scanned completely. When the first page is scanned, the scanning is paused and a preview image appears.

Advanced Options

Touching the Advanced Options button opens a screen where you can change the following settings:

- **Advanced Imaging**—This lets you adjust the Background Removal, Color Balance, Color Dropout, Contrast, JPEG Quality, Negative Image, Mirror Image, Scan edge to edge, Shadow Detail, Sharpness, and Temperature image output settings before you send the document.
- **Custom Job (Job Build)**—This lets you combine multiple scanning jobs into a single job.
- **Transmission Log**—This lets you print the transmission log or transmission error log.
- **Scan Preview**—This lets you display the first page of an image before it is included in the FTP file. When the first page is scanned, the scanning is paused and a preview image appears.
- **Edge Erase**—This lets you eliminate smudges or information around the edges of a document. You can choose to eliminate an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or pick a particular edge. Edge Erase will erase whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scan.

Scanning to a computer or flash drive

ADF	Scanner glass
	
Use the ADF for multiple-page documents.	Use the scanner glass for single pages, small items (such as postcards or photos), transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings).

The scanner lets you scan documents directly to a computer or a flash drive. The computer does not have to be directly connected to the printer for you to receive Scan to PC images. You can scan the document back to the computer over the network by creating a scan profile on the computer and then downloading the profile to the printer.

Scanning to a computer

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2. Click **Scan Profile** > **Create**.
3. Select your scan settings, and then click **Next**.
4. Select a location on your computer where you want to save the scanned output file.
5. Enter a scan name.

   The scan name is the name that appears in the Scan Profile list on the display.

6. Click **Submit**.
7. Review the instructions on the Scan Profile screen.

   A shortcut number was automatically assigned when you clicked **Submit**. You can use this shortcut number when you are ready to scan your documents.

   a. Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

      Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

   b. If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

c Press #, and then enter the shortcut number using the keypad, or touch **Held Jobs** on the home screen, and then touch **Profiles**.

d After entering the shortcut number, the scanner scans and sends the document to the directory or program you specified. If you touched **Profiles** on the home screen, then locate your shortcut on the list.

8 Return to the computer to view the file.

The output file is saved in the location or launched in the program you specified.

Scanning to a flash drive

1 Load an original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

2 If you are loading a document into the ADF, then adjust the paper guides.

3 Insert the flash drive into the USB port on the front of the printer.

The USB Drive home screen appears.

4 Select the destination folder, and then touch **Scan to USB drive**.

5 Adjust the scan settings.

6 Touch **Scan It**.

Understanding the Scan Center features

The Scan Center software lets you modify scan settings and select where to send the scanned output. Scan settings modified with the Scan Center software can be saved and used for other scan jobs.

The following features are available:

- Scan and send images to your computer
- Convert scanned images to text
- Preview the scanned image and adjust the brightness and contrast
- Make larger scans without losing detail
- Scan two-sided documents

Using the ScanBack Utility

You can use the Lexmark ScanBack™ Utility instead of the Embedded Web Server to create scan-to-PC profiles. The ScanBack Utility is on the *Software and Documentation* CD.

1 Set up your scan-to-PC profile:

a Launch the ScanBack Utility.

b Select the printer you want to use.

If no printers are listed, then contact your system support person to obtain a list, or click **Setup** to manually search for an IP address or host name.

c Follow the instructions on your computer screen to define the type of document being scanned and what kind of output you want to create.

d Make sure to select:

- **Show MFP Instructions**—if you want to view or print the final directions.
- **Create Shortcut**—if you want to save this group of settings to use again.

e Click **Finish**.

A dialog box appears with your scan profile information and the status of the received images.

2 Scan your original documents:

a Load all pages in the ADF or on the scanner glass.

b From the printer control panel, navigate to:

Scan/Email > **Profiles** > select your scan profile > **Submit**

Note: Your output file is saved in a directory or launched in the application you specified.

Understanding scan profile options

Original Size

This option sets the size of the documents you are going to scan. When Original Size is set to Mixed Sizes, you can scan an original document that contains mixed paper sizes (letter- and legal-size pages).

Resolution

This option adjusts the output quality of your file. Increasing the image resolution increases the file size and the time needed to scan your original document. Image resolution can be decreased to reduce the file size.

Color

This option enables or disables color for the scanned image.

Content

This option tells the printer the original document type. Choose from Text, Graphics, Text/Photo, or Photo.

Choose content type from Text, Text/Photo, Photo, or Graphic.

- **Text**—Use when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art.
- **Graphic**—Use when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations.
- **Text/Photo**—Use when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos.
- **Photo**—Use when the original document is mostly a photo or an image.

Choose content source from Color Laser, Black/White Laser, Inkjet, Photo/Film, Magazine, Newspaper, Press, or Other.

- **Color Laser**—Use when the original document was printed using a color laser printer.
- **Black/White**—Use when the original document was printed using a black/white laser printer.
- **Inkjet**—Use when the original document was printed using an inkjet printer.

- **Photo/Film**—Use when the original document is a photo from film.
- **Magazine**—Use when the original document is from a magazine.
- **Newspaper**—Use when the original document is from a newspaper.
- **Press**—Use when the original document was printed using a printing press.
- **Other**—Use when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

Darkness

This option adjusts how light or dark your scanned documents will turn out in relation to the original document.

Page Setup

This option lets you change the Sides (Duplex), Orientation, and Binding.

- **Sides (Duplex)**— Use this to specify if the original document is simplex (printed on one page) or duplex (printed on both sides). This also identifies what needs to be scanned for inclusion in the e-mail.
- **Orientation**— Use this to specify the orientation of the original document, and then change **Sides** and **Binding** to match the orientation.
- **Binding**— Use this to specify if the original document is bound on the long-edge or short-edge of the page.

Scan Preview

This option displays the first page of the image before it is included in the e-mail. When the first page is scanned, the scanning is paused and a preview image appears.

Advanced Options

Touching the Advanced Options button opens a screen where you can change the following settings:

- **ADF Skew Fix**— Use this to correct slight skew in the scanned image.
- **Advanced Imaging**— Use this to change or adjust Background Removal, Color Balance, Color Dropout, Contrast, JPEG Quality, Mirror Image, Negative Image, Scan Edge to Edge, Shadow Detail, Sharpness, and Temperature before scanning a document.
- **Custom Job**—Use this to combine multiple scan jobs into a single scan job.
- **Edge Erase**—Use this to remove smudges or information around the edges of a document. You can choose to eliminate an equal area around all four sides of the paper, or pick a particular edge. Edge Erase will erase whatever is within the area selected, leaving nothing on that portion of the scanned image.
- **Transmission Log**—Use this to print the transmission log or transmission error log.

Understanding printer menus

Menus list

Supplies

Replace Supply
Cyan Cartridge
Magenta Cartridge
Yellow Cartridge
Black Cartridge
Separator Roll and Pick Assembly
Waste Toner Bottle
Fuser
Transfer Module
Staple Cartridge
Hole Punch Box

Paper Menu

Default Source
Paper Size/Type
Configure MP
Substitute Size
Paper Texture
Paper Weight
Paper Loading
Custom Types
Custom Names
Custom Scan Sizes
Custom Bin Names
Universal Setup
Bin Setup

Reports

Menu Settings Page
Device Statistics
Network Setup Page
Network [x] Setup Page
Shortcut List
Fax Job Log
Fax Call Log
Copy Shortcuts
E-mail Shortcuts
Fax Shortcuts
FTP Shortcuts
Profiles List
Print Fonts
Print Directory
Asset Report

Settings

General Settings
Copy Settings
Fax Settings
E-mail Settings
FTP Settings
Flash Drive Menu
Print Settings

Security

Edit Security Setups
Miscellaneous Security Settings
Confidential Print
Disk Wiping
Security Audit Log
Set Date and Time

Network/Ports

Active NIC
Network[1]
Standard USB
Parallel [x]
Serial [x]
SMTP Setup

Help

Print All Guides
Copy Guide
E-mail Guide
Fax Guide
FTP Guide
Print Defects Guide
Information Guide
Supplies Guide

Manage Shortcuts

Fax Shortcuts
E-mail Shortcuts
FTP Shortcuts
Copy Shortcuts
Profile Shortcuts

Option Card Menu

A list of installed DLEs (Download Emulators) appears.[2]

[1] Depending on the printer setup, this menu item appears as Standard Network or Network [x].

[2] This menu appears only when one or more DLEs are installed.

Supplies menu

Menu item	Description
Replace Supply Separator Roll and Pick Assembly Yes No	Provides the option to reset the supply counter for the separator pad • Select Yes to reset the supply counter. • Select No to exit.
Cyan Cartridge Cartridge Nearly Low Cartridge Low Cartridge Very Low Cartridge Critically Low Invalid Replace Missing or Defective OK Unsupported	Shows the status of the cyan toner cartridge
Magenta Cartridge Cartridge Nearly Low Cartridge Low Cartridge Very Low Cartridge Critically Low Invalid Replace Missing or Defective OK Unsupported	Shows the status of the magenta toner cartridge
Yellow Cartridge Cartridge Nearly Low Cartridge Low Cartridge Very Low Cartridge Critically Low Invalid Replace Missing or Defective OK Unsupported	Shows the status of the yellow toner cartridge

Menu item	Description
Black Cartridge Cartridge Nearly Low Cartridge Low Cartridge Very Low Cartridge Critically Low Invalid Replace Missing or Defective OK Unsupported	Shows the status of the black toner cartridge
Separator Roll and Pick Assembly OK Replace	Shows the status of the Separator Roll and Pick Assembly
Waste Toner Bottle Near Full Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the waste toner bottle
Fuser Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the fuser
Transfer Module Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the transfer module
Staple Cartridge Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the staple cartridge
Hole Punch Box Near Full Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the hole punch box

Paper menu

Default Source menu

Menu item	Description
Default Source Tray [x] MP Feeder Manual Paper Manual Envelope	Sets a default paper source for all print jobs **Notes:** • Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting. • From the Paper menu, Configure MP feeder must be set to Cassette for MP feeder to appear as a menu setting. • If the same size and type of paper are in two trays and the Paper Size and Paper Type settings match, then the trays are automatically linked. When one tray is empty, the print job continues using the linked tray.

Paper Size/Type menu

Menu item	Description
Tray [x] Size Letter Legal Executive Oficio (México) Folio Statement Universal A4 A5 JIS B5	Specifies the paper size loaded in each tray **Notes:** • Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting. • For trays with automatic size sensing, only the size detected by the hardware appears. • If the same size and type of paper are in two trays and the Paper Size and Paper Type settings match, then the trays are automatically linked. When one tray is empty, the print job uses the linked tray.
Note: Only installed trays are listed in this menu.	

Menu item	Description
Tray [x] Type Plain Paper Card Stock Transparency Recycled Glossy Heavy Glossy Labels Vinyl Labels Bond Letterhead Preprinted Colored Paper Light Paper Heavy Paper Rough/Cotton Paper Custom Type [x]	Specifies the type of paper loaded in each tray **Notes:** • Plain Paper is the factory default setting for Tray 1. Custom Type [x] is the factory default setting for all other trays. • If available, a user-defined name will appear instead of Custom Type [x]. • Use this menu item to configure automatic tray linking.
MP Feeder Size Letter Legal Executive Oficio (México) Folio Statement Universal 7 3/4 Envelope 9 Envelope 10 Envelope DL Envelope C5 Envelope B5 Envelope Other Envelope A4 A5 A6 JIS B5	Specifies the paper size loaded in the multipurpose feeder **Notes:** • Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting. • From the Paper menu, Configure MP Feeder must be set to Cassette for MP Feeder to appear as a menu item.
Note: Only installed trays are listed in this menu.	

Menu item	Description
MP Feeder Type Custom Type [x] Plain Paper Card Stock Transparency Recycled Glossy Heavy Glossy Labels Vinyl Labels Bond Envelope Rough Envelope Letterhead Preprinted Colored Paper Light Paper Heavy Paper Rough/Cotton Paper	Specifies the type of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder **Notes:** • Custom Type [x] is the factory default setting. • From the Paper menu, Configure MP Feeder must be set to Cassette for MP Feeder to appear as a menu item.
Manual Paper Size Letter Legal Executive Oficio (México) Folio Statement Universal A4 A5 A6 JIS B5	Specifies the size of the paper being manually loaded **Note:** Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.
Note: Only installed trays are listed in this menu.	

Menu item	Description
Manual Paper Type Plain Paper Card Stock Transparency Recycled Glossy Heavy Glossy Labels Vinyl Labels Bond Letterhead Preprinted Colored Paper Light Paper Heavy Paper Rough/Cotton Paper Custom Type [x]	Specifies the type of paper being manually loaded **Note:** Plain Paper is the factory default setting.
Manual Envelope Size 10 Envelope DL Envelope C5 Envelope B5 Envelope Other Envelope 7 3/4 Envelope 9 Envelope	Specifies the size of the envelope being manually loaded **Note:** 10 Envelope is the US factory default setting. DL Envelope is the international factory default setting.
Manual Envelope Type Envelope Rough Envelope Custom Type [x]	Specifies the type of envelope being manually loaded **Note:** Envelope is the factory default setting.
Note: Only installed trays are listed in this menu.	

Configure MP menu

Menu item	Description
Configure MP Cassette Manual First	Determines when the printer selects paper from the multipurpose feeder **Notes:** • Cassette is the factory default setting. Cassette configures the multipurpose feeder as the automatic paper source. • Manual sets the multipurpose feeder only for manual feed print jobs. • First configures the multipurpose feeder as the primary paper source.

Substitute Size menu

Menu item	Description
Substitute Size All Listed Off Statement/A5 Letter/A4	Substitutes a specified paper size if the requested paper size is not available **Notes:** • All Listed is the factory default setting. All available size substitutions are allowed. • Off indicates no size substitutions are allowed. • Setting a size substitution lets a print job continue without a Change Paper message appearing.

Paper Texture menu

Menu item	Description
Plain Texture Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the plain paper loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Card Stock Texture Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the card stock loaded **Notes:** • Normal is the factory default setting. • Settings appear only if card stock is supported.
Transparency Texture Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the transparencies loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Recycled Texture Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the recycled paper loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Glossy Texture Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the glossy paper loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy Glossy Texture Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the glossy paper loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Labels Texture Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the labels loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Vinyl Labels Texture Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the vinyl labels loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Bond Texture Rough Smooth Normal	Specifies the relative texture of the bond paper loaded **Note:** Rough is the factory default setting.
Envelope Texture Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the envelopes loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Rough Envelope Texture Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the envelopes loaded **Note:** Rough is the factory default setting.
Letterhead Texture Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the letterhead loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Preprinted Texture Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the preprinted paper loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Colored Texture Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the colored paper loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Light Texture Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the paper loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy Texture Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the paper loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Rough/Cotton Texture Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the cotton paper loaded **Note:** Rough is the factory default setting.
Custom [x] Texture Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the custom paper loaded **Notes:** • Normal is the factory default setting. • Settings appear only if the custom type is supported.

Paper Weight menu

Menu item	Description
Plain Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the plain paper loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Card Stock Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the card stock loaded **Notes:** • Normal is the factory default setting. • Settings appear only if card stock is supported.
Transparency Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the transparencies loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Recycled Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the recycled paper loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Glossy Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the glossy paper loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Heavy Glossy Weight Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the glossy paper loaded **Note:** Heavy is the factory default setting.
Labels Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the labels loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Vinyl Labels Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of vinyl labels loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Bond Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the bond paper loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Envelope Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the envelopes loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Rough Envelope Weight Heavy Light Normal	Specifies the relative weight of the envelopes loaded **Note:** Heavy is the factory default setting.
Letterhead Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the letterhead loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Preprinted Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the preprinted paper loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Colored Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the colored paper loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Light Weight Light	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded **Note:** Light is the factory default setting.
Heavy Weight Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded **Note:** Heavy is the factory default setting.
Rough/Cotton Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the cotton paper loaded **Note:** Normal is the factory default setting.
Custom [x] Weight Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the custom paper loaded **Notes:** • Normal is the factory default setting. • Settings appear only if the custom type is supported.

Paper Loading menu

Menu item	Description
Card Stock Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Card Stock as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Notes: • Duplex sets the printer default to 2-sided printing for every print job unless 1-sided printing is selected from Print Properties. • If Duplex is selected, then all print jobs are sent through the duplex unit, including 1-sided print jobs.	

Menu item	Description
Recycled Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Recycled as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Glossy Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Glossy as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Heavy Glossy Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Heavy Glossy as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Labels Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Labels as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Vinyl Labels Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Vinyl Labels as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Bond Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Bond as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Letterhead Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Letterhead as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Preprinted Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Preprinted as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Colored Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Colored as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Light Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Light as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Heavy Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Heavy as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Rough/Cotton Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Rough or Cotton as the paper type **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

Notes:

- Duplex sets the printer default to 2-sided printing for every print job unless 1-sided printing is selected from Print Properties.
- If Duplex is selected, then all print jobs are sent through the duplex unit, including 1-sided print jobs.

Menu item	Description
Custom [x] Loading Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Custom [x] as the paper type **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • Custom [x] Loading is available only if the custom paper type is supported.
Notes: • Duplex sets the printer default to 2-sided printing for every print job unless 1-sided printing is selected from Print Properties. • If Duplex is selected, then all print jobs are sent through the duplex unit, including 1-sided print jobs.	

Custom Types menu

Menu item	Description
Custom Type [x] Paper Card Stock Transparency Glossy Rough/Cotton Labels Vinyl Labels Envelope	Associates a paper or specialty media type with a factory default `Custom Type [x]` name or a user-defined Custom Name created from the Embedded Web Server or from MarkVision™ Professional **Notes:** • Paper is the factory default setting. • The custom media type must be supported by the selected tray or multipurpose feeder in order to print from that source.
Recycled Paper Card Stock Transparency Glossy Rough/Cotton Labels Vinyl Labels Envelope	Specifies a paper type when the Recycled setting is selected in other menus **Notes:** • Paper is the factory default setting. • The custom media type must be supported by the selected tray or multipurpose feeder in order to print from that source.

Custom Names menu

Menu item	Definition
Custom Name [x] [none]	Specify a custom name for a paper type. This name replaces the `Custom Type [x]` name in the printer menus.

Custom Bin Names menu

Menu Item	Description
Standard Bin	Specifies a custom name for the Standard Bin
Bin [x]	Specifies a custom name for Bin [x]

Custom Scan Sizes menu

Menu item	Description
Custom Scan Size [x] Scan Size Name Width 1–8.5 inches (25–215.9 mm) Height 1–25 inches (25–635 mm) Orientation Portrait Landscape 2 scans per side Off On	Specifies a custom scan size name, scan sizes and options. The custom scan size name replaces **Custom Scan Size [x]** in the printer menus. **Notes:** • 8.5 inches is the US factory default setting for Width. 210 millimeters is the international factory default setting for Width. • 14 inches is the US factory default setting for Height. 297 millimeters is the international factory default setting for Height. • Portrait is the factory default setting for Orientation. • Off is the factory default setting for 2 scans per side.

Universal Setup menu

These menu items are used to specify the height and width of the Universal paper size. The Universal paper size is a user-defined paper size setting. It is listed with the other paper size settings and includes similar options, such as support for duplex printing and printing multiple pages on one sheet.

Menu item	Description
Units of Measure Inches Millimeters	Identifies the unit of measure **Note:** Inches is the US factory default setting. Millimeters is the international factory default setting.
Portrait Width 3–48 inches 76–1219 mm	Sets the portrait width **Notes:** • If the width exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum width allowed. • 8.5 inches is the US factory default setting. 216 mm is the international factory default setting. • The width can be increased in 0.01-inch or in 1-mm increments.

Menu item	Description
Portrait Height 3–48 inches 76–1219 mm	Sets the portrait height **Notes:** • If the height exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum height allowed. • 14 inches is the US factory default setting. 356 mm is the international factory default setting. • The height can be increased in 0.01-inch or in 1-mm increments.
Feed Direction Short Edge Long Edge	Specifies the feed direction **Notes:** • Short Edge is the factory default setting. • Long Edge appears only if the longest edge is shorter than the maximum width supported in the tray.

Bin Setup menu

Menu Item	Description
Output Bin Standard Bin Bin [x]	Specifies the default output bin **Note:** Standard Bin is the factory default setting.
Configure Bins Mailbox Link Mail Overflow Link Optional Type Assignment	Specifies configuration options for output bins **Notes:** • Mailbox is the factory default setting. This setting treats each bin as a separate mailbox. • Link configures all available bins as one large output bin. • Link Optional links together all available output bins except the standard bin and only appears when at least two optional bins are installed. • Type Assignment assigns each paper type to an output bin or linked bin set. • Bins assigned the same name are automatically linked unless Link Optional is selected.
Overflow Bin Standard Bin Bin [x]	Specifies an alternate output bin when a designated bin is full **Note:** Standard Bin is the factory default setting.

Menu Item	Description
Assign Type/Bin Plain Paper Bin Card Stock Bin Transparency Bin Recycled Bin Glossy Bin Heavy Glossy Bin Labels Bin Vinyl Labels Bin Bond Bin Envelope Bin Rough Envelope Bin Letterhead Bin Preprinted Bin Colored Bin Light Paper Bin Heavy Paper Bin Rough/Cotton Bin Custom [x] Bin	Selects an output bin for each supported paper type Available selections for each type are: Disabled Standard Bin Bin [x] **Note:** Disabled is the factory default setting.

Reports menu

Reports menu

Menu item	Description
Menu Settings Page	Prints a report containing information about the paper loaded into trays, installed memory, total page count, alarms, timeouts, printer control panel language, TCP/IP address, status of supplies, status of the network connection, and other information
Device Statistics	Prints a report containing printer statistics such as supply information and details about printed pages
Network Setup Page	Prints a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address information **Note:** This menu item appears only in network printers or printers connected to print servers.
Network [x] Setup Page	Prints a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address information **Notes:** • This menu item is available when there is more than one network option installed. • This menu item appears only in network printers or printers connected to print servers.

Menu item	Description
Shortcut List	Prints a report containing information about configured shortcuts
Fax Job Log	Prints a report containing information about the last 200 completed faxes **Note:** This menu item is available only when Enable Job Log is set to On in the Fax Settings menu.
Fax Call Log	Prints a report containing information about the last 100 attempted, received, and blocked calls **Note:** This menu item is available only when Enable Job Log is set to On in the Fax Settings menu.
Copy Shortcuts	Prints a report containing information about copy shortcuts
E-mail Shortcuts	Prints a report containing information about e-mail shortcuts
Fax Shortcuts	Prints a report containing information about fax shortcuts
FTP Shortcuts	Prints a report containing information about FTP shortcuts
Profiles List	Prints a list of profiles stored in the printer
Print Fonts	Prints a report of all the fonts available for the printer language currently set in the printer
Print Directory	Prints a list of all the resources stored on an optional flash memory card or printer hard disk **Notes:** • Job Buffer Size must be set to 100%. • Make sure the optional flash memory or printer hard disk is installed correctly and working.
Asset Report	Prints a report containing asset information including the printer serial number and model name. The report contains text and UPC barcodes that can be scanned into an asset database.

Network/Ports menu

Active NIC menu

Menu item	Description
Active NIC Auto [list of available network cards]	**Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • This menu item appears only if an optional network card is installed.

Standard Network or Network [x] menus

Note: Only active ports appear in this menu; all inactive ports are omitted.

Menu item	Description
PCL SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When Off is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.
PS SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When Off is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.
NPA Mode Auto Off	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Network Buffer Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed]	Sets the size of the network input buffer **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • The value can be changed in 1-KB increments. • The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off. • To increase the maximum size range for the Network Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and USB buffers. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Job Buffering Off On Auto	Temporarily stores print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing. This menu only appears if a formatted disk is installed. **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • On buffers print jobs on the printer hard disk. • Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.

Menu item	Description
Mac Binary PS Auto On Off	Sets the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol. • On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.
Standard Network Setup Reports Network Card TCP/IP IPv6 Wireless AppleTalk	Displays and sets the printer network settings. **Note:** The Wireless menu appears only when the printer is connected to a wireless network.
Network [x] Setup Reports Network Card TCP/IP IPv6 Wireless AppleTalk	

Network Reports menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > **Standard Network** or **Network [x]** > **Standard Network Setup** or **Network Setup** > **Reports** or **Network Reports**

Menu item	Description
Print Setup Page	Prints a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address

Network Card menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > **Standard Network** or **Network [x]** > **Standard Network Setup** or **Network [x] Setup** > **Network Card**

Menu item	Description
View Card Status Connected Disconnected	Lets you view the connection status of the network card
View Card Speed	Lets you view the speed of a currently active network card

Menu item	Description
View Network Address UAA LAA	Lets you view the network addresses
End-of-Job Timeout 0–255	Sets the amount of time in seconds before a network print job is canceled. **Notes:** • 90 seconds is the factory default setting. • A setting value of 0 disables the timeout. • If a value of 1–9 is selected, then the setting is saved as 10.
Banner Page Off On	Allows the printer to print a banner page. **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

TCP/IP menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > **Standard Network** or **Network [x]** > **Standard Network Setup** or **Network [x] Setup** > **TCP/IP**

Note: This menu is available only in network models or printers attached to print servers.

Menu item	Description
Activate On Off	Activates TCP/IP **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Set Hostname	Lets you set the current TCP/IP hostname **Note:** This can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
IP Address	Lets you view or change the current TCP/IP address **Note:** Manually setting the IP address sets the Enable DHCP and Enable Auto IP settings to Off. It also sets Enable BOOTP and Enable RARP to Off on systems that support BOOTP and RARP.
Netmask	Lets you view or change the current TCP/IP netmask
Gateway	Lets you view or change the current TCP/IP gateway
Enable DHCP On Off	Specifies the DHCP address and parameter assignment setting **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Enable RARP On Off	Specifies the RARP address assignment setting **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Enable BOOTP On Off	Specifies the BOOTP address assignment setting **Note:** On is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Enable AutoIP Yes No	Specifies the Zero Configuration Networking setting **Note:** Yes is the factory default setting.
Enable FTP/TFTP Yes No	Enables the built-in FTP server, which allows you to send files to the printer using File Transfer Protocol. **Note:** Yes is the factory default setting.
Enable HTTP Server Yes No	Enables the built-in web server (Embedded Web Server). When enabled, the printer can be monitored and managed remotely using a web browser. **Note:** Yes is the factory default setting.
WINS Server Address	Lets you view or change the current WINS server address
Enable DDNS Yes No	Lets you view or change the current DDNS setting **Note:** Yes is the factory default setting.
Enable mDNS Yes No	Lets you view or change the current mDNS setting **Note:** Yes is the factory default setting.
DNS Server Address	Lets you view or change the current DNS server address
Enable HTTPS Yes No	Lets you view or change the current HTTPS setting **Note:** Yes is the factory default setting.

IPv6 menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > **Standard Network** or **Network [x]** > **Standard Network Setup** or **Network [x] Setup** > **IPv6**

Note: This menu is available only for network models or printers attached to print servers.

Menu item	Description
Enable IPv6 On Off	Enables IPv6 in the printer **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Auto Configuration On Off	Specifies whether the network adapter accepts the automatic IPv6 address configuration entries provided by a router **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Set Hostname	Lets you set the hostname **Note:** These settings can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
View Address	
View Router Address	
Enable DHCPv6 On Off	Enables DHCPv6 in the printer **Note:** On is the factory default setting.

Wireless menu

Use the following menu items to view or configure the wireless internal print server settings.

Note: This menu is available only for models connected to a wireless network.

The Wireless menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > **Standard Network** or **Network [x]** > **Standard Network Setup** or **Network [x] Setup** > **Wireless**

Menu item	Description
WPS PBC Mode	Lets you connect the printer to a wireless network by pressing buttons on both the printer and the access point (wireless router) within a given period of time
WPS PIN Mode	Lets you connect the printer to a wireless network by using a PIN on the printer and entering it into the wireless settings of the access point
WPS Auto Detect Disable Enable	Automatically detects the connection method that an access point with WPS uses— WPS Push Button Configuration (PBC) or WPS Personal Identification Number (PIN) **Note:** Disable is the factory default setting.
Network Mode Ad hoc Infrastructure	Specifies the network mode **Notes:** • Ad hoc is the factory default setting. This configures wireless connection directly between the printer and a computer. • Infrastructure lets the printer access a network using an access point.
Compatibility 802.11b/g/n 802.11n 802.11b/g	Specifies the wireless standard for the wireless network **Note:** The 802.11b/g/n is the factory default setting.
Choose Network [list of available networks]	Lets you select an available network for the printer to use
View Signal Quality	Lets you view the quality of the wireless connection
View Security Mode	Lets you view the encryption method that a wireless network uses

Note: *Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS)* is a simple and secure configuration that allows you to establish a wireless network and enable network security without requiring prior knowledge of Wi-Fi technology. It is no longer necessary to configure the network name (SSID) and WEP key or WPA passphrase for network devices.

AppleTalk menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

Network/Ports > **Standard Network** or **Network [x]** > **Standard Network Setup** or **Network [x] Setup** > **AppleTalk**

Menu item	Description
Activate Yes No	Activates AppleTalk support **Note:** Yes is the factory default setting.
View Name	Shows the assigned AppleTalk name **Note:** The name can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
View Address	Shows the assigned AppleTalk address **Note:** The address can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
Set Zone [default] [list of zones available on the network]	Provides a list of AppleTalk zones available on the network **Note:** When "default" is selected, the printer uses the AppleTalk zone that the router identifies as the default zone for the network. If no default zone exists, then the zone marked with an * is the default setting.

Standard USB menu

Menu item	Description
PCL SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if the PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if the PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.
PS SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if the PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if the PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.
NPA Mode Auto On Off	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. Auto sets the printer to examine data, determine the format, and then process it appropriately. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.

Menu item	Description
USB Buffer Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed] Disabled	Sets the size of the USB input buffer **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • Disabled turns off job buffering. Any jobs already buffered on the printer hard disk are printed before normal processing resumes. • The USB buffer size value can be changed in 1-KB increments. • The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off. • To increase the maximum size range for the USB Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and network buffers. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Job Buffering Off On Auto	Temporarily stores print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • On buffers jobs on the printer hard disk. • Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Mac Binary PS Auto On Off	Sets the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs. • Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol.
ENA Address yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy	Sets the network address information for an external print server **Note:** This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA Netmask yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy	Sets the netmask information for an external print server **Note:** This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA Gateway yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy	Sets the gateway information for an external print server **Note:** This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.

Parallel [x] menu

Menu item	Description
PCL SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.
PS SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.
NPA Mode Auto On Off	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Parallel Buffer Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed] Disabled	Sets the size of the parallel input buffer **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • Disabled turns off job buffering. Any print jobs already buffered on the printer hard disk are printed before normal processing resumes. • The parallel buffer size setting can be changed in 1-KB increments. • The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off. • To increase the maximum size range for the Parallel Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the USB, serial, and network buffers. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Job Buffering Off On Auto	Temporarily stores print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • On buffers print jobs on the printer hard disk. • Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.

Menu item	Description
Advanced Status On Off	Enables bidirectional communication through the parallel port **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • Off disables parallel port negotiation.
Protocol Fastbytes Standard	Specifies the parallel port protocol **Notes:** • Fastbytes is the factory default setting. It provides compatibility with most existing parallel ports and is the recommended setting. • Standard tries to resolve parallel port communication problems.
Honor Init Off On	Determines if the printer honors printer hardware initialization requests from the computer **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • The computer requests initialization by activating the Init signal from the parallel port. Many personal computers activate the Init signal each time the computer is turned on.
Parallel Mode 2 On Off	Determines if the parallel port data is sampled on the leading or trailing edge of a strobe **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Mac Binary PS Auto On Off	Sets the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol. • On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.
ENA Address yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy	Sets the network address information for an external print server **Note:** This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA Netmask yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy	Sets the netmask information for an external print server **Note:** This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
ENA gateway yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy	Sets the gateway information for an external print server **Note:** This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.

Serial [x] menu

Menu item	Description
PCL SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.
PS SmartSwitch On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.
NPA Mode Auto On Off	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. Auto sets the printer to examine data, determine the format, and then processes it appropriately. • When set to On, the printer performs NPA processing. If the data is not in NPA format, it is rejected as bad data. • When set to Off, the printer does not perform NPA processing. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Serial Buffer Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed] Disabled	Sets the size of the serial input buffer **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. • Disabled turns off job buffering. Any jobs already buffered on the disk are printed before normal processing is resumed. • The serial buffer size setting can be changed in 1-KB increments. • The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off. • To increase the maximum size range for the Serial Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and network buffers. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.

Menu item	Description
Job Buffering Off On Auto	Temporarily stores print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. The printer does not buffer print jobs on the printer hard disk. • On buffers print jobs on the printer hard disk. • Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port. • Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.
Protocol DTR DTR/DSR XON/XOFF XON/XOFF/DTR XONXOFF/DTRDSR	Selects the hardware and software handshaking settings for the serial port **Notes:** • DTR is the factory default setting. • DTR/DSR is a hardware handshaking setting. • XON/XOFF is a software handshaking setting. • XON/XOFF/DTR and XON/XOFF/DTR/DSR are combined hardware and software handshaking settings.
Robust XON Off On	Determines whether the printer communicates availability to the computer **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • This menu item applies only to the serial port if Serial Protocol is set to XON/XOFF.
Baud 9600 19200 38400 57600 115200 138200 172800 230400 345600 1200 2400 4800	Specifies the rate at which data can be received through the serial port **Notes:** • 9600 is the factory default setting. • 138200, 172800, 230400, and 345600 baud rates are only displayed in the Standard Serial menu. These settings do not appear in the Serial Option 1, Serial Option 2, or Serial Option 3 menus.
Data Bits 8 7	Specifies the number of data bits sent in each transmission frame **Note:** 8 is the factory default setting.
Parity None Ignore Even Odd	Sets the parity for serial input and output data frames **Note:** None is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Honor DSR Off On	Determines whether the printer uses the DSR Signal **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • DSR is a handshaking signal used by most serial cables. The serial port uses DSR to distinguish data sent by the computer from data created by electrical noise in the serial cable. The electrical noise can cause stray characters to print. Set this to On to prevent stray characters from printing.

SMTP Setup menu

Menu item	Description
Primary SMTP Gateway	Specifies SMTP server gateway and port information **Note:** 25 is the default SMTP gateway port.
Primary SMTP Gateway Port	
Secondary SMTP Gateway	
Secondary SMTP Gateway Port	
SMTP Timeout 5–30	Specifies the amount of time in seconds before the server stops trying to send an e-mail **Note:** 30 seconds is the factory default setting.
Reply Address	Specifies a reply address of up to 128 characters in the e-mail sent by the printer
Use SSL Disabled Negotiate Required	Sets the printer to use SSL for increased security when connecting to the SMTP server **Notes:** • Disabled is the factory default setting. • When the Negotiate setting is used, the SMTP server determines if SSL will be used.
SMTP Server Authentication No authentication required Login/Plain CRAM-MD5 Digest-MD5 NTLM Kerberos 5	Specifies the type of user authentication required for scan to e-mail privileges **Note:** "No authentication required" is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Device-Initiated E-mail None Use Device SMTP Credentials	Specifies what credentials will be used when communicating to the SMTP server. Some SMTP servers require credentials to send an e-mail. **Notes:** • None is the factory default setting for Device and User-Initiated E-mail. • Device Userid and Device Password are used to log in to the SMTP server when Use Device SMTP Credentials is selected.
User-Initiated E-mail None Use Device SMTP Credentials Use Session User ID & Password Use Session E-mail address & Password Prompt User	
Device Userid	
Device Password	
Kerberos 5 Realm	
NTLM Domain	

Security menu

Editing Security Setups menu

Menu item	Description
Edit Backup Password	Creates a backup password **Note:** This menu item will only appear if a backup password exists.
Edit Building Blocks	Edits the Internal Accounts, NTLM, various Setups, Password, and PIN
Edit Security Templates	Adds or edits a Security Template
Edit Access Controls	Controls access to printer menus, firmware updates, held jobs, and other access points

Miscellaneous Security Settings menu

Menu item	Description
Login Restrictions Login failures Failure time frame Lockout time Panel Login Timeout Remote Login Timeout	Limits the number and time frames of failed login attempts from the printer control panel before *all* users are locked out **Notes:** • "Login failures" specifies the number of failed login attempts before users are locked out. Settings range from 1–10 attempts is the factory default setting. • "Failure time frame" specifies the time frame during which failed login attempts can be made before users are locked out. Settings range from 1–60 minutes. 5 minutes is the factory default setting. • "Lockout time" specifies how long users are locked out after exceeding the login failures limit. Settings range from 1–60 minutes. 5 minutes is the factory default setting. 1indicates the printer does not impose a lockout time. • "Panel Login Timeout" specifies how long the printer remains idle on the Home screen before automatically logging the user off. Settings range from 1–900 seconds. 30 seconds is the factory default setting. • "Remote Login Timeout" specifies how long a remote interface remains idle before automatically logging the user off. Settings range from 1–120 seconds. 10 minutes is the factory default setting.
Security Reset Jumper Access controls="No Security" No Effect Reset factory security defaults	Changes the value of the security settings **Notes:** • Access controls="No Security" retains all the security information that the user has defined. "No Security" is the factory default setting. • "No Effect" means the reset has no effect on the device's security configuration. • "Reset factory security defaults" deletes all security information that the user has defined, and assigns the factory default value to each setting in the Miscellaneous Security Settings section of both the panel and the Web page.
LDAP Certificate Verification Demand Try Allow Never	Allows the user to request a server certificate **Notes:** • "Demand" means a server certificate is requested. If a bad certificate is provided or if no certificate is provided, the session is terminated immediately. "Demand" is the factory default setting. • "Try " means a server certificate is requested. If no certificate is provided, the session proceeds normally. If a bad certificate is provided, the session is terminated immediately. • "Allow" means a server certificate is requested. If no certificate is provided, the session proceeds normally. If a bad certificate is provided, it will be ignored and the session proceeds normally. • "Never" means no server certificate is requested.
Minimum PIN Length 1–16	Limits the digit length of the PIN. **Note:** 4 is the is the factory default setting.

Confidential Print menu

Menu item	Description
Max Invalid PIN Off 2–10	Limits the number of times an invalid PIN can be entered **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • This menu item appears only if a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed. • Once the limit is reached, the print job for that user name and that PIN are deleted.
Job Expiration Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	Limits the amount of time a confidential print job stays in the printer before it is deleted **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • If the Job Expiration setting is changed while confidential print jobs reside on the printer RAM or printer hard disk, then the expiration time for those print jobs does not change to the new default value. • If the printer is turned off, all confidential jobs held in printer RAM are deleted.

Disk Wiping menu

Disk Wiping erases *only* print job data on the printer hard disk that *are not* currently in use by the file system. All permanent data on the printer hard disk are preserved, such as downloaded fonts, macros, and held jobs.

Note: This menu item appears only if a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed.

Menu item	Description
Wiping Mode Off Auto Manual	Disk Wiping erases *only* print job data that *is not* currently in use by the file system from the printer hard disk. All permanent data on the printer hard disk is preserved, such as downloaded fonts, macros, and held jobs. **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • Due to the large amount of resources required for Automatic Wiping, activating this option may decrease printer performance, especially if the printer requires hard disk space faster than it can be wiped and returned to service.
Manual Wiping Do not start now Start now	Manual Wiping overwrites all disk space that has been used to hold data from a print job that has been processed (printed). This type of wipe *does not* erase any information related to an unprocessed print job. **Notes:** • "Do not start now" is the factory default setting. • If the Disk Wiping access control is activated, then a user must successfully authenticate and have the required authorization in order to initiate the disk wipe.

Menu item	Description
Automatic Method Single pass Multiple pass	Automatic wiping marks all disk space used by a previous print job and does not permit the file system to reuse this space until it has been cleared. Only Automatic wiping enables users to activate disk wiping without having to turn the printer off for an extended amount of time. **Notes:** • "Single pass" is the factory default setting. • Highly confidential information should be wiped using *only* the Multiple pass method.
Manual Method Single pass Multiple pass	Both manual and scheduled wiping allow the file system to reuse marked disk space without having to wipe it first. **Notes:** • "Single pass" is the factory default setting. • This menu item will not appear if Wiping Mode is set to "Off" or "Auto". • Highly confidential information should be wiped using *only* the Multiple pass method.
Scheduled Method Single pass Multiple pass	Both manual and scheduled wiping allow the file system to reuse marked disk space without having to wipe it first. **Notes:** • "Single pass" is the factory default setting. • This menu item will not appear if Wiping Mode is set to "Off" or "Auto". • Highly confidential information should be wiped using *only* the Multiple pass method . • Scheduled wipes are initiated *without* displaying a user warning or confirmation message.

Security Audit Log menu

Menu item	Description
Export Log	Enables an authorized user to export the audit log **Notes:** • To export the audit log from the printer control panel, a flash drive must be attached to the printer. • From the Embedded Web Server, the audit log can be downloaded to a computer.
Delete Log Yes No	Specifies whether audit logs are deleted **Note:** "Yes" is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Configure Log Enable Audit No Yes Enable Remote Syslog No Yes Remote Syslog Facility 0–23 Severity of events to log 0–7	Specifies whether and how audit logs are created **Notes:** • Enable Audit determines if events are recorded in the secure audit log and remote syslog. No is the factory default setting. • Enable Remote Syslog determines if logs are sent to a remote server. No is the factory default setting. • Remote Syslog Facility determines the value used to send logs to the remote syslog server. 4 is the factory default setting. • With the security audit log activated, the severity value of each event is recorded. 4 is the factory default setting.

Set Date and Time menu

Menu item	Description
Current Date and Time	Lets you view the current date and time settings for the printer
Manually Set Date and Time [input date/time]	Lets you set the date and time for the printer. **Note:** Date and time are set in YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM format.
Time Zone [list of time zones]	Lets you set the time zone for the printer. **Note:** GMT is the factory default setting.
Automatically Observe DST On Off	Enables Daylight Saving Time associated with the set time zone. **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Custom Time Zone UTC Offset DST Start Week DST Start Day DST Start Month DST Start Time DST End Week DST End Day DST End Month DST End Time DST Offset	Sets a custom time zone.
Enable NTP On Off	Enables Network Time Protocol, which synchronizes the clocks of devices on a network **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • Use this recommended date and time setting.

Settings menu

General Settings menu

Menu item	Description
Display Language English Francais Deutsch Italiano Espanol Greek Dansk Norsk Nederlands Svenska Portuguese Suomi Russian Polski Magyar Turkce Cesky Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese Korean Japanese	Sets the language of the text appearing on the display **Note:** All languages may not be available for all printers.
Eco-Mode Off Energy Energy/Paper Paper	Minimizes the use of energy, paper, or specialty media **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. Off resets the printer to its factory default settings. • Energy minimizes the power used by the printer. Performance may be affected, but print quality is not. • Energy/Paper minimizes the use of power and of paper and specialty media. • Paper minimizes the amount of paper and specialty media needed for a print job. Performance may be affected, but print quality is not.
ADF Loaded Beep Enabled Disabled	Specifies whether the ADF emits a beep when paper is loaded **Note:** Enabled is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Quiet Mode Off On	Reduces the amount of noise produced by the printer **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. This setting supports the performance specifications for your printer. • On configures the printer to produce as little noise as possible. This setting is best suited for printing text and line graphics. • For optimal printing of color-rich documents, set Quiet Mode to Off. • Selecting **Photo** from the driver may disable Quiet Mode and provide better print quality and full speed printing.
Run Initial setup Yes No	Instructs the printer to run the setup wizard **Notes:** • Yes is the factory default setting. • After completing the setup wizard by selecting Done at the Country select screen, the default becomes No.
Keyboard Keyboard Type English Francais Francais Canadien Deutsch Italiano Espanol Greek Dansk Norsk Nederlands Svenska Suomi Portuguese Russian Polski Swiss German Swiss French Korean Magyar Turkish Czech Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese Japanese Custom Key [x]	Specifies a language and custom key information for the printer control panel keyboard. The additional tabs enable access to accent marks and symbols from the printer control panel keyboard.

Menu item	Description
Paper Sizes US Metric	**Notes:** • US is the factory default setting. • Initial setting is determined by your country or region selection in the initial setup wizard. • Changing this setting also changes the Units of Measurement setting in the Universal Setup menu and the default for each input source in the Paper Size/Paper Type menu.
Scan to PC Port Range [port range]	Specifies a valid port range for printers behind a port blocking firewall. The valid ports are specified by two sets of numbers separated by a semicolon. **Note:** 9751:12000 is the factory default setting.
Displayed Information Left side Right side Custom Text [x]	Specifies what is displayed on the upper left and right corners of the home screen For the Left side and Right side options, choose from the following options: None IP Address Hostname Contact Name Location Date/Time mDNS/DDNS Service Name Zero Configuration Name Custom Text [x] Model Name **Notes:** • IP Address is the factory default setting for Left side. • Date/Time is the factory default setting for Right side.

Menu item	Description
Displayed Information (continued) Paper Jam Load Paper Service Errors	Lets you customize the displayed information for Paper Jam, Load Paper, and Service Errors Choose from the following options: Display No Yes Message to Display Default Alternate Default [text entry] Alternate [text entry] **Notes:** • No is the factory default setting for Display. • Default is the factory default setting for Message to Display.
Home screen customization Change Language Copy Copy shortcuts Fax Fax Shortcuts E-mail E-mail Shortcuts FTP FTP Shortcuts Search Held Jobs Held Jobs USB Drive Profiles Bookmarks Jobs by user	Lets you change the buttons that appear on the home screen Available selections for each button are: Do not display Display
Date Format MM-DD-YYYY DD-MM-YYYY YYYY-MM-DD	Formats the printer date
Time Format 12 hour A.M./P.M. 24 hour clock	Formats the printer time
Screen Brightness 20–100	Specifies the brightness of the printer control panel screen

Menu item	Description
One Page Copy Off On	Sets the copies from the scanner glass to only one page at a time **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Output Lighting Normal/Standby Mode Off Dim Bright	Sets the amount of light from the standard bin **Notes:** • If Eco-Mode is set to Energy or Energy/Paper, the factory default setting is Dim. • if Eco-Mode is Off or set to Paper, the factory default setting is Bright.
Output Lighting Sleep Mode Off Dim Bright	Sets the amount of light from the standard bin or an optional output bin **Notes:** • If Eco-Mode is set to Energy or Energy/Paper, the factory default setting is Off. • If Eco-Mode is Off or set to Paper, the factory default setting is Dim.
Audio Feedback Button Feedback On Off Volume 1–10	**Notes:** • On is the factory default setting for Button Feedback. • 5 is the factory default setting for Volume.
Tactile Touchscreen Feedback On Off	Specifies whether the operator panel provides touch sensation feedback
Show Bookmarks Yes No	Specifies whether bookmarks are displayed from the Held Jobs area **Note:** Yes is the factory default setting. When Yes is selected, bookmarks appear in the Held Jobs area.
Allow Background Removal On Off	Specifies whether image background removal is allowed during copy, fax, e-mail, FTP, or scan to USB **Note:** On is the factory default setting. The background of the image will be removed.
Allow Custom Job Scans On Off	Lets you scan multiple jobs to one file **Note:** On is the factory default setting. If On is selected, the Allow Custom Job Scans setting can be enabled for specific jobs.

Menu item	Description
Scanner Jam Recovery Job level Page level	Specifies how a scanned job should be reloaded if a paper jam occurs in the ADF **Notes:** • If Job level is selected, the entire job must be rescanned if any pages jam. • If Page level is selected, rescan from the jammed page forward.
Web Page Refresh Rate 30–300	Specifies the number of seconds between Embedded Web Server refreshes **Note:** 120 seconds is the factory default setting.
Contact Name	Specifies a contact name for the printer **Note:** The contact name will be stored on the Embedded Web Server.
Location	Specifies the location of the printer **Note:** The location will be stored on the Embedded Web Server.
Alarms Alarm Control Cartridge Alarm Staple Alarm	Sets an alarm to sound when the printer requires operator intervention Available selections for each alarm type are: Off Single Continuous **Notes:** • Single is the factory default setting for Alarm Control. Single sounds three quick beeps. • Off is the factory default setting for Cartridge Alarm. Off means no alarm will sound. • Continuous repeats three beeps every 10 seconds.
Timeouts Standby Mode 1–240 Disabled	Specifies the number of minutes of inactivity before the system enters a lower power state **Note:** 15 minutes is the factory default setting.
Timeouts Sleep Mode 1–240 min Disabled	Sets the amount of time the printer waits after a job is printed before it goes into a reduced power state **Notes:** • 30 minutes is the factory default setting. • Disabled appears only when Energy Conserve is set to Off. • Lower settings conserve more energy, but may require longer warm-up times. • Select a high setting if the printer is in constant use. Under most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to print with minimum warm-up time.

Menu item	Description
Timeouts Screen Timeout 15–300 sec	Sets the amount of time in seconds the printer waits before returning the printer display to a **Ready** state **Note:** 30 seconds is the factory default setting.
Timeouts Print Timeout Disabled 1-255 sec	Sets the amount of time in seconds the printer waits to receive an end-of-job message before canceling the remainder of the print job **Notes:** • 90 seconds is the factory default setting. • When the timer expires, any partially printed page still in the printer is printed, and then the printer checks to see if any new print jobs are waiting. • Print Timeout is available only when using PCL emulation. This setting has no effect on PostScript emulation print jobs.
Timeouts Wait Timeout 15–65535 sec Disabled	Sets the amount of time in seconds the printer waits for additional data before canceling a print job **Notes:** • 40 seconds is the factory default setting. • Wait Timeout is available only when the printer is using PostScript emulation. This setting has no effect on PCL emulation print jobs.
Timeouts Job Hold Timeout 5–255 sec	Sets the amount of time the printer waits for user intervention before it holds jobs that require unavailable resources and continues to print other jobs in the print queue **Notes:** • 30 seconds is the factory default setting. • This menu item appears only when a hard disk is installed.
Print Recovery Auto Continue Disabled 5–255	Lets the printer automatically continue printing from certain offline situations when not resolved within the specified time period **Note:** Disabled is the factory default setting.
Print Recovery Jam Recovery Auto On Off	Specifies whether the printer reprints jammed pages **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. The printer reprints jammed pages unless the memory required to hold the pages is needed for other printer tasks. • On sets the printer to always reprint jammed pages. • Off sets the printer to never reprint jammed pages.

Menu item	Description
Print Recovery Page Protect Off On	Lets the printer successfully print a page that may not have printed otherwise **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. Off prints a partial page when there is not enough memory to print the whole page. • On sets the printer to process the whole page so that the entire page prints.
Press Sleep Button Sleep Hibernate Do nothing	Determines how the scanner, while in Idle state, reacts to a short press of the Sleep button **Note:** Sleep is the factory default setting.
Press and Hold Sleep Button Do nothing Sleep Hibernate	Determines how the scanner, while in Idle state, reacts to a long press of the Sleep button **Note:** Do nothing is the factory default setting.
Factory Defaults Do Not Restore Restore Now	Returns the printer settings to the factory default settings **Notes:** • Do Not Restore is the factory default setting. Do Not Restore keeps the user-defined settings. • Restore Now returns all printer settings to the factory default settings except Network/Ports menu settings. All downloads stored in RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in flash memory or on a printer hard disk are not affected.

Copy Settings menu

Menu item	Description
Content Type Text/Photo Text Graphics Photo	Specifies the type of content contained in the copy job **Notes:** • Text/Photo is the factory default setting. Text/Photo is used when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos. • Text is used when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art. • Graphics is used when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations. • Photo is used when the document being scanned is mostly a photo or an image.

Menu item	Description
Content Source Color Laser Inkjet Magazine Press Black/White Laser Photo/Film Newspaper Other	Specifies the source of content in the copy job **Notes:** • Color Laser is the factory default setting. Color Laser is used when the original document was printed using a color laser printer. • Black/White Laser is used when the original document was printed using a black/white laser printer. • Inkjet is used when the original document was printed using a inkjet printer. • Photo/Film is used when the original document is a photo from film • Magazine is used when the original document is from a magazine. • Newspaper is used when the original document is from a newspaper. • Press is used when the original document was printed using a printing press. • Other is used when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.
Color On Off	Specifies whether or not copies are printed in color **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Allow color copies On Off	Lets you enable or disable color in copying **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • Setting this to Off will hide all color-specific menus. • This setting overrides the Color setting.
Sides (Duplex) 1 sided to 1 sided 1 sided to 2 sided 2 sided to 1 sided 2 sided to 2 sided	Specifies whether an original document is duplex (two-sided) or simplex (one-sided), and then specifies whether the copy should be duplex or simplex **Notes:** • **1 sided to 1 sided**—The original page has printing on one side and the copied page will also have printing on one side. • **1 sided to 2 sided**—The original page has printing on one side while the copied page will have printing on both sides. For example, if the original document is six sheets, the copy is three sheets with printing on both sides. • **2 sided to 1 sided**—The original page has printing on both sides while the copied page will have printing on only one side. For example, if the original document is three sheets with an image on each side of each sheet, then the copy is six sheets with only one image on one side of each sheet. • **2 sided to 2 sided**—The original page has printing on both sides and the copy mimics the original exactly.
Paper Saver Off 2 on 1 Portrait 2 on 1 Landscape 4 on 1 Portrait 4 on 1 Landscape	Allows copying two or four sheets of a document on one page **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Print Page Borders Off On	Specifies whether or not a border is printed around the edge of the page **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Collate On [1,2,1,2,1,2] Off [1,1,1,2,2,2]	Keeps the pages of a print job stacked in sequence when printing multiple copies **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Punch Off 2 holes 3 holes 4 holes	Determines the type of hole punch finishing to be used in a print or copy job **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Staple Off On	Lets you enable or disable the staple finisher **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • This menu only appears when a staple finisher is installed.
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card ID Card Custom Scan Size [x] A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) JIS B4 JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes	Specifies the paper size of the original document **Notes:** • Letter is the US factory default setting. • A4 is the international factory default setting.
Copy To Source Tray [x] Auto Size Match Manual Feeder	Specifies the paper source for copy jobs **Note:** Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Transparency Separators On Off	Places a sheet of paper between transparencies **Note:** On is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Separator Sheets None Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Places a sheet of paper between pages, copies, or jobs **Note:** None is the factory default setting.
Separator Sheet Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies the separator sheet source **Note:** Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Specifies the level of darkness for the copy job **Note:** 5 is the factory default setting.
Output Bin Standard Bin Bin [x]	Specifies the exit bin to be used for the copy job **Notes:** • Standard Bin is the factory default setting. • Bin [x] only appears when at least one optional exit bin is installed.
Number of Copies 1–999	Specifies the number of copies for the copy job **Note:** 1 is the factory default setting.
Header/Footer Top left Top left Off Date/Time Page number Custom text Print on All pages First page only All but first page Custom text	Specifies header/footer information for the top left of the page **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting for Top left. • All pages is the factory default setting for Print on.
Header/Footer Top middle Top middle Off Date/Time Page number Bates number Custom text Print on All pages First page only All but first page Custom text	Specifies header/footer information for the middle of the page **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting for Top middle. • All pages is the factory default setting for Print on.

Menu item	Description
Header/Footer Top right Top right Off Date/Time Page number Bates number Custom text Print on All pages First page only All but first page Custom text	Specifies header/footer information for the top right of the page **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting for Top right. • All pages is the factory default setting for Print on.
Header/Footer Bottom left Bottom left Off Date/Time Page number Bates number Custom text Print on All pages First page only All but first page Custom text	Specifies header/footer information for the bottom left of the page **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting for Bottom left. • All pages is the factory default setting for Print on.
Header/Footer Bottom middle Bottom middle Off Date/Time Page number Bates number Custom text Print on All pages First page only All but first page Custom text	Specifies header/footer information for the bottom middle of the page **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting for Bottom middle. • All pages is the factory default setting for Print on.

Menu item	Description
Header/Footer Bottom right Bottom right Off Date/Time Page number Bates number Custom text Print on All pages First page only All but first page Custom text	Specifies header/footer information for the bottom right of the page **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting for Bottom right. • All pages is the factory default setting for Print on.
Overlay Off Confidential Copy Draft Urgent Custom	Specifies the overlay text printed on each page of the copy job **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Custom Overlay	Specifies the custom overlay text **Note:** A maximum of 64 characters is allowed.
Allow priority copies On Off	Allows interruption of a print job to copy a page or document **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Custom Job scanning Off On	Lets you copy, in a single copy job, a document that contains mixed paper sizes **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • This menu item appears only if a valid printer hard drive is installed.
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Lets you save custom copy settings as shortcuts **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Background Removal -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of background visible on a copy **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
Auto Center Off On	Lets you automatically center the content on the page **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan - Red Magenta - Green Yellow - Blue	Enables an equal balance of colors in the output

Menu item	Description
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specifies which color to drop during copies, and how much to increase or decrease the dropout **Notes:** • None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. • 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.
Contrast Best for content 0–5	Specifies the contrast used for the copy job **Note:** Best for content is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image Off On	Creates a mirror image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image Off On	Creates a negative image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of shadow detail visible on a copy **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
ADF Skew Fix Off On	Lets you fix slight skew on the scanned image **Note:** Off is the factory default setting
Scan edge to edge Off On	Specifies if the original document is scanned edge-to-edge **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjusts the amount of sharpness of a copy **Note:** 3 is the factory default setting.
Temperature -4 to 4	Enables the user to specify “warm” or “cool” outputs. "Cool” values generate a bluer output than the default, while “warm” values generate a redder output than the default.
Sample Copy Off On	Creates a sample copy of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

Fax Settings menu

Fax Mode (Analog Fax Setup) menu

Analog Fax Setup mode sends the fax job by way of a telephone line.

General Fax Settings

Menu item	Description
Fax Name or Station Name	Specifies the name of the fax in the printer
Fax Number or Station Number	Specifies a number associated with the fax
Station ID Fax Name or Station Name Fax Number or Station Number	Specifies how the fax is identified
Enable Manual Fax Off On	Sets the printer to fax manually only, which requires a line splitter and a telephone handset **Notes:** • Use a regular telephone to answer an incoming fax job and to dial a fax number. • Touch **# 0** on the numeric keypad to go directly to the Manual Fax function.
Memory Use Equal Mostly sent All send All receive Mostly receive	Defines the allocation of non-volatile memory between sending and receiving fax jobs **Notes:** • Equal is the factory default setting. Equal splits the memory for sending and receiving fax jobs into equal amounts. • Mostly sent specifies that most of the memory is set to send fax jobs. • All send specifies that all the memory is set to send fax jobs. • All receive specifies that all the memory is set to receive fax jobs. • Mostly receive specifies that most of the memory is set to receive fax jobs.
Cancel Faxes Allow Don't Allow	Specifies whether or not the printer cancels fax jobs
Caller ID On Off Alternate	Specifies type of caller ID being used
Fax number masking Off From left From right	Specifies the direction from where digits are masked in an outgoing fax number **Note:** The number of characters masked is determined by the "Digits to mask" setting.
Digits to mask 0–58	Specifies the number of digits to mask in an outgoing fax number

Menu item	Description
Fax Cover Page Fax Cover Page Off by default On by default Never use Always use Include to field On Off Include from field Off On From Include Message field Off On Message Include Logo Off On Include Footer [x] Footer [x]	Configures the fax cover page **Note:** "Off by default" is the factory default setting for all Fax Cover Page options.

Fax Send Settings

Menu item	Description
Resolution Standard Fine 200 dpi Super Fine 300 dpi Ultra Fine 600 dpi	Specifies quality in dots per inch (dpi). A higher resolution gives greater print quality, but increases the fax transmission time for outgoing faxes. **Note:** Standard is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Original Size Mixed Sizes Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size [x] A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) A6 JIS B4 JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense	Specifies the paper size of the document that is being scanned **Note:** Mixed Sizes is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	Specifies how text and graphics are oriented on a page **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). • Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).
Content Type Text Text/Photo Graphics Photo	Specifies the type of content that will be scanned for faxing **Notes:** • Text is the factory default setting. Text is used when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art. • Text/Photo is used when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos. • Graphics is used when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations. • Photo is used when the document being scanned is mostly a photo or an image.

Menu item	Description
Content Source Color Laser Inkjet Magazine Press Black/White Laser Photo/Film Newspaper Other	Specifies how the output is produced **Notes:** • Color Laser is the factory default setting. Color Laser is used when the original document was printed using a color laser printer. • Black/White is used when the original document was printed using a black/white laser printer. • Inkjet is used when the original document was printed using a inkjet printer. • Photo/Film is used when the original document is a photo from film • Magazine is used when the original document is from a magazine. • Newspaper is used when the original document is from a newspaper. • Press is used when the original document was printed using a printing press. • Other is used when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.
Darkness 1–9	Lightens or darkens the output **Note:** 5 is the factory default setting.
Dial Prefix	Lets you enter a dialing prefix, such as 99. A numeric entry field is provided.
Dialing Prefix Rules Prefix Rule [x]	Establishes a dialing prefix rule
Automatic Redial 0–9	Specifies the number of times the printer tries to send the fax to a specified number **Note:** 5 is the factory default setting.
Redial Frequency 1–200	Specifies the number of minutes between redials
Behind a PABX No Yes	Enables switchboard blind dialing without a dial tone
Enable ECM Yes No	Enables Error Correction Mode for fax jobs
Enable Fax Scans On Off	Lets you fax files that are scanned at the computer
Driver to fax Yes No	Allows the driver to fax jobs to be sent by the printer
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Lets you save fax numbers as shortcuts in the printer
Dial Mode Tone Pulse	Specifies the dialing sound, either as a tone or a pulse

Menu item	Description
Max Speed 2400 4800 9600 14400 33600	Specifies the maximum speed in baud at which faxes are sent
Custom Job scanning Off On	Lets you scan a document that contains mixed paper sizes into a single file
Scan Preview Off On	Specifies whether a preview will appear on the display for scan jobs
Background Removal -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of background visible on a copy **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan - Red Magenta - Green Yellow - Blue	Enables an equal balance of colors in the output
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specifies which color to drop during faxing, and how much to increase or decrease the dropout **Notes:** • None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. • 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.
Contrast Best for content 0–5	Specifies the contrast of the output **Note:** "Best for content" is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image Off On	Creates a mirror image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image Off On	Creates a negative image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of shadow detail visible on a fax **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
ADF Skew Fix Off On	Specifies whether or not to fix slight skew on the scanned image **Note:** Off is the factory default setting
Scan edge to edge Off On	Specifies if the original document is scanned edge-to-edge prior to faxing **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 0–5	Adjusts the sharpness of a fax **Note:** 3 is the factory default setting.
Temperature -4 to 4	Enables the user to specify “warm” or “cool” outputs. "Cool” values generate a bluer output than the default while “warm” values generate a redder output than the default.
Enable Color Fax Scans Off by default On by default Never use Always use	Enables color faxing **Note:** “Off by default” is the factory default setting.
Auto Convert Color Faxes to Mono Faxes On Off	Converts all outgoing faxes to black and white **Note:** On is the factory default setting.

Fax Receive Settings

Menu item	Description
Enable Fax Receive On Off	Allows fax jobs to be received by the printer **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Rings to Answer 1–25	Specifies the number of rings before answering an incoming fax job **Note:** 1 is the factory default setting.
Auto Reduction On Off	Scales an incoming fax job so that it fits the size of the paper loaded in the designated fax source **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Paper Source Auto Tray [x] Multi-Purpose Feeder	Specifies the paper source selected to supply paper for the printer to print an incoming fax
Output Bin Standard Bin Bin 1[x]	Specifies an output bin for received faxes **Note:** Bin 1 is available only when the finisher is installed.
Sides (Duplex) Off On	Enables duplex printing (two-sided printing) for incoming fax jobs

Menu item	Description
Separator Sheets None Before Job After Job	Enables the printer to include separator sheets in the output
Separator Sheet Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies where the printer will pick the separator sheet
Fax Footer Off On	Prints the transmission information at the bottom of each page from a received fax **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Max Speed 33600 2400 4800 9600 14400	Specifies the maximum speed in baud at which faxes are received
Fax Forwarding Print Print and Forward Forward	Enables forwarding of received faxes to another recipient
Forward to Fax E-mail FTP LDSS eSF	Specifies the type of recipient to which faxes will be forwarded **Note:** This item is available only from the printer Embedded Web Server.
Forward to Shortcut	Lets you enter the shortcut number which matches the recipient type (Fax, E-mail, FTP, LDSS, or eSF)
Block No Name Fax Off On	Enables blocking of incoming faxes sent from devices with no station ID specified
Banned Fax List	Enables the list of banned fax numbers stored in the printer
Holding Faxes Held Fax Mode Off Always On Manual Scheduled Fax Holding Schedule	Enables fax holding all of the time or according to a set schedule **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Enable Color Fax Receive On Off	Enables the device to receive fax in color

Fax Log Settings

Menu item	Description
Transmission Log Print log Do not print log Print only for error	Enables printing of a transmission log after each fax job
Receive Error Log Print Never Print on Error	Enables printing of a receive error log following a receive error
Auto Print Logs On Off	Enables automatic printing of fax logs **Note:** Logs print after every 200 jobs.
Log Paper Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Selects the source of the paper used for printing logs
Logs Display Remote Fax Name or Remote Station Name Dialed Number	Specifies whether printed logs display the dialed number or the station name returned
Enable Job Log On Off	Enables access to the Fax Job log
Enable Call Log On Off	Enables access to the Fax Call log
Log Output Bin Standard Bin Bin [x]	Specifies the output bin where fax logs are printed

Speaker Settings

Menu item	Description
Speaker Mode On until Connected Always On Always Off	Specifies the mode of the speaker. **Notes:** • "On until Connected" is the factory default setting. A sound is issued until the fax connection is made. • Always On turns the speaker on. • Always Off turns the speaker off.
Speaker Volume High Low	Controls the volume setting **Note:** High is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Ringer Volume On Off	Controls the fax speaker ringer volume **Note:** On is the factory default setting.

Answer On

Menu item	Description
All Rings Single Ring Only Double Ring Only Triple Ring Only Single or Double Rings Only Single or Triple Rings Only Double or Triple Rings Only	Specifies ring patterns when device is answering calls **Note:** All Rings is the factory default setting.

Fax Mode (Fax Server Setup) menu

Fax Server mode sends the fax job to a fax server for transmission.

Fax Server Setup

Menu item	Description
To Format	Lets you enter the information using the virtual keyboard on the printer touch screen
Reply Address	
Subject	
Message	
SMTP Setup	Specifies SMTP setup information
Primary SMTP Gateway	Specifies SMTP server port information
Secondary SMTP Gateway	
Image Format PDF (.pdf) XPS (.xps) TIFF (.tif)	Specifies the image type for scan to fax
Content Type Text Text/Photo Graphics Photo	Specifies the type of content that will be scanned to fax **Notes:** • Text is the factory default setting. Text is used when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art. • Text/Photo is used when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos. • Graphics is used when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations. • Photo is used when the document being scanned is mostly a photo or an image.

Menu item	Description
Content Source Color Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other	Specifies how content will be produced **Notes:** • Color Laser is the factory default setting. Color Laser is used when the original document was printed using a color laser printer. • Black/White is used when the original document was printed using a black/white laser printer. • Inkjet is used when the original document was printed using a inkjet printer. • Photo/Film is used when the original document is a photo from film • Magazine is used when the original document is from a magazine. • Newspaper is used when the original document is from a newspaper. • Press is used when the original document was printed using a printing press. • Other is used when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.
Fax Resolution Standard Fine 200 dpi Super Fine 300 dpi Ultra Fine 600 dpi	Specifies the resolution level for scan to fax
Darkness 1–9	Lightens or darkens the output **Note:** 5 factory default setting.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specifies the orientation of the scanned image
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size [x] A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) JIS B4 JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes	Specifies the paper size of the document that is being scanned **Note:** Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Provides a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan to fax job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page of the job. **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Enable Analog Receive Off On	Enables analog fax receive **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

E-mail Settings menu

Menu item	Description
E-mail Server Setup Subject Message Base file name	Specifies e-mail server information **Notes:** • The subject box has a limitation of 255 characters. • The message box has a limitation of 512 characters.
E-mail Server Setup Send me a copy Never appears On by default Off by default Always On	Sends a copy of the e-mail back to the sender **Note:** "Never appears" is the factory default setting.
E-mail Server Setup Max E-mail size 0–65535 KB	Specifies the maximum e-mail size in kilobytes **Note:** E-mails above the specified size are not sent.
E-mail Server Setup Size error message	Sends a message when an e-mail is greater than the configured size limit
E-mail Server Setup Limit destinations	Specifies a domain name, such as a company domain name, and then limits e-mail destinations to that domain name only **Notes:** • E-mail can be sent only to the specified domain. • The limit is one domain.

Menu item	Description
E-mail Server Setup Web Link Setup Server Login Password Path Base file name Web Link	Defines the e-mail server path name; for example: **/directory/path** **Note:** The characters *** : ? < >** | are invalid entries for a path name.
Format PDF (.pdf) Secure PDF TIFF (.tif) JPEG (.jpg) XPS (.xps)	Specifies the format of the scanned file **Note:** PDF (.pdf) is the factory default setting.
PDF Version 1.5 1.6 A-1a 1.2 1.3 1.4	Sets the version of the PDF file that will be scanned for e-mailing **Note:** 1.5 is the factory default setting.
Content Type Text/Photo Photo Text Graphics	Specifies the type of content that will be scanned for e-mailing **Notes:** • Text/Photo is the factory default setting. Text/Photo is used when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos. • Text is used when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art. • Graphics is used when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations. • Photo is used when the document being scanned is mostly a photo or an image.
Content Source Color Laser Inkjet Magazine Press Black/White Laser Photo/Film Newspaper Other	Specifies the source of the document being scanned **Notes:** • Color Laser is the factory default setting. Color Laser is used when the original document was printed using a color laser printer. • Black/White is used when the original document was printed using a black/white laser printer. • Inkjet is used when the original document was printed using a inkjet printer. • Photo/Film is used when the original document is a photo from film • Magazine is used when the original document is from a magazine. • Newspaper is used when the original document is from a newspaper. • Press is used when the original document was printed using a printing press. • Other is used when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.

Menu item	Description
Color Color Gray	Specifies whether or not a job prints in grayscale or color **Note:** Color is the factory default setting.
Resolution 150 200 300 400 600 75	Specifies the resolution of the scan in dots per inch **Note:** 150 is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Lightens or darkens the output **Note:** 5 is the factory default setting.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specifies the orientation of the scanned image **Note:** Portrait is the factory default setting.
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size [x] A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) A6 JIS B4 JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes	Specifies the paper size of the document being scanned **Notes:** • A4 is the international factory default setting. • Letter is the US factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	Specifies how the text and graphics are oriented on the page **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). • Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).

Menu item	Description
JPEG Quality Best for Content 5–90	Sets the quality of a JPEG photo image in relation to file size and quality of the image **Notes:** • "Best for content" is the factory default setting. • 5 reduces the file size and quality of the image. • 90 provides the best image quality, but the file size is very large. • This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Text Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a text image in relation to file size and quality of the image **Note:** 75 is the factory default setting.
Text/Photo Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a text or photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Note:** 75 is the factory default setting.
Photo Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Note:** 50 is the factory default setting.
E-mail images sent as Attachment Web Link	Specifies how the images will be sent **Note:** Attachment is the factory default setting.
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Provides a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan-to-e-mail job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page of the job. **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Transmission Log Print log Do not print log Print only for error	Specifies whether or not the transmission log prints **Note:** Print log is the factory default setting.
Log Paper Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies the paper source for printing e-mail logs **Note:** Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Log Output Bin Standard Bin Bin [x]	Specifies an exit bin for e-mail logs **Notes:** • Standard Bin is the factory default setting. • Bin [x] only appears when at least one optional exit bin is installed.
E-mail Bit Depth 8 bit 1 bit	Enables the Text/Photo mode to produce smaller file sizes by using 1-bit images when Color is set to Off **Note:** 8 bit is the factory default setting.
Custom Job scanning Off On	Lets you copy, in a single copy job, a document that contains mixed paper sizes **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Scan Preview Off On	Specifies whether or not a preview will appear on the display for scan jobs **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Lets you save e-mail addresses as shortcuts **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • When set to Off, the Save as Shortcut button does not appear on the e-mail Destination screen.
Background Removal -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of background visible on a scanned image **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan - Red Magenta - Green Yellow - Blue	Enables an equal balance of colors in the output
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specifies which color to drop during scanning, and how much to increase or decrease the dropout **Notes:** • None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. • 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.
Contrast Best for content 0–5	Specifies the contrast of the output **Note:** "Best for content" is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image Off On	Creates a mirror image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image Off On	Creates a negative image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of shadow detail visible on a scanned image **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
ADF Skew Fix Off On	Corrects slight skew in the scanned image **Note:** Off is the factory default setting

Menu item	Description
Scan edge to edge Off On	Specifies whether the original document is scanned edge-to-edge **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjusts the amount of sharpness on a scanned image **Note:** 3 is the factory default setting.
Temperature -4 to 4	Enables the user to specify “warm” or “cool” outputs. "Cool” values generate a bluer output than the default while “warm” values generate a redder output than the default.
Use cc:/bcc: Off On	Enables the use of the cc: and bcc: fields **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

FTP Settings menu

Menu item	Description
Format PDF (.pdf) Secure PDF (.pdf) TIFF (.tif) JPEG (.jpg) XPS (.xps)	Specifies the format of the FTP file **Note:** PDF (.pdf) is the factory default setting.
PDF Version 1.5 1.6 A-1a 1.2 1.3 1.4	Sets the version level of the PDF file for FTP **Note:** 1.5 is the factory default setting.
Content Type Text Graphics Text/Photo Photo	Specifies the type of content that will be scanned to FTP **Notes:** • Text/Photo is the factory default setting. Text/Photo is used when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos. • Text is used when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art. • Graphics is used when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations. • Photo is used when the document being scanned is mostly a photo or an image.

Menu item	Description
Content Source Color Laser Inkjet Magazine Press Black/White Laser Photo/Film Newspaper Other	Specifies how content will be produced **Notes:** • Color Laser is the factory default setting. Color Laser is used when the original document was printed using a color laser printer. • Black/White is used when the original document was printed using a black/white laser printer. • Inkjet is used when the original document was printed using a inkjet printer. • Photo/Film is used when the original document is a photo from film • Magazine is used when the original document is from a magazine. • Newspaper is used when the original document is from a newspaper. • Press is used when the original document was printed using a printing press. • Other is used when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.
Color Color Gray	Specifies whether a job prints in grayscale or color **Note:** Color is the factory default setting.
Resolution 150 200 300 400 600 75	Specifies how many dots per inch are scanned **Note:** 150 dpi is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Lightens or darkens the output **Note:** 5 is the factory default setting.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specifies the orientation of the scanned image **Note:** Portrait is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size [x] A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) A6 JIS B4 JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes	Specifies the paper size of the document that is being scanned **Notes:** • A4 is the international factory default setting. • Letter is the US factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	Specifies how the text and graphics are oriented on the page **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). • Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).
JPEG Quality Best for Content 5–90	Sets the quality of a JPEG photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Notes:** • "Best for content" is the factory default setting. • 5 reduces the file size, but the quality of the image is lessened. • 90 provides the best image quality, but the file size is very large. • This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Text Default 5–90	Sets the quality of the text in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Note:** 75 is the factory default setting.
Text/Photo Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a text/photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Note:** 75 is the factory default setting.
Photo Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a photo image in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Note:** 50 is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Provides a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan to FTP job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page of the job. **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Transmission Log Print log Do not print log Print only for error	Specifies whether the transmission log prints **Note:** "Print log" is the factory default setting.
Log Paper Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies a paper source for FTP logs **Note:** Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Log Output Bin Standard Bin Bin [x]	Specifies an exit bin for FTP logs **Notes:** • Standard Bin is the factory default setting. • Bin [x] only appears when at least one optional exit bin is installed.
FTP bit Depth 8 bit 1 bit	Enables the Text/Photo mode to have smaller file sizes by using 1-bit images when Color is set to Off **Note:** 8 bit is the factory default setting.
Base File Name	Lets you enter a base file name **Note:** There is an image limitation of 53 characters.
Custom Job Scanning Off On	Lets you copy a document that contains mixed paper sizes into a single job **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Scan Preview Off On	Specifies whether a preview will appear on the display for scan jobs **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Allow Save as Shortcut On Off	Enables shortcut creation for FTP addresses **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Background Removal -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of background visible on a copy **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan - Red Magenta - Green Yellow - Blue	Enables an equal balance of colors in the output

Menu item	Description
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specifies which color to drop during scanning, and how much to increase or decrease the dropout **Notes:** • None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. • 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.
Contrast 0–5 Best for content	Specifies the contrast of the output **Note:** "Best for content" is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image Off On	Creates a mirror image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image Off On	Creates a negative image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of shadow detail visible on a scanned image **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
ADF Skew Fix Off On	Specifies whether or not to fix slight skew on the scanned image **Note:** Off is the factory default setting
Scan edge to edge Off On	Specifies whether the original document is scanned edge-to-edge **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjusts the amount of sharpness of a scanned image **Note:** 3 is the factory default setting.
Temperature -4 to 4	Enables the user to specify "warm" or "cool" outputs. "Cool" values generate a bluer output than the default while "warm" values generate a redder output than the default.

Flash Drive menu

Scan Settings

Menu item	Description
Format PDF (.pdf) Secure PDF TIFF (.tif) JPEG (.jpg) XPS (.xps)	Specifies the format of the file to be sent through FTP **Note:** PDF (.pdf) is the factory default setting.
PDF Version 1.2–1.6 A-1a	Sets the version of the PDF file to be sent through FTP **Note:** 1.5 is the factory default setting.
Content Type Text/Photo Photo Text Graphics	Specifies the type of content that will be scanned through FTP **Notes:** • Text/Photo is the factory default setting. Text/Photo is used when the original document is a mixture of text, graphics, and photos. • Text is used when the content of the original document is mostly text or line art. • Graphics is used when the original document is mostly business-type graphics such as pie charts, bar charts, and animations. • Photo is used when the document being scanned is mostly a photo or an image.
Content Source Color Laser Inkjet Photo/Film Magazine Newspaper Press Other Black and White Laser	Specifies the source of content in the scan job **Notes:** • Color Laser is the factory default setting. Color Laser is used when the original document was printed using a color laser printer. • Black/White is used when the original document was printed using a black/white laser printer. • Inkjet is used when the original document was printed using an inkjet printer. • Photo/Film is used when the original document is a photo from film • Magazine is used when the original document is from a magazine. • Newspaper is used when the original document is from a newspaper. • Press is used when the original document was printed using a printing press. • Other is used when the original document was printed using an alternate or unknown printer.
Color Gray Color	Specifies whether prints are in grayscale or color **Note:** Gray is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Resolution 150 200 300 400 600 75	Specifies the resolution of the scan in dots per inch (dpi) **Note:** 150 is the factory default setting.
Darkness 1–9	Lightens or darkens the output **Note:** 5 is the factory default setting.
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specifies the orientation of the scanned image **Note:** Portrait is the factory default setting.
Original Size Letter Legal Executive Tabloid Folio Statement Universal 4 x 6 in. 3 x 5 in. Business Card Custom Scan Size [x] A3 A4 A5 Oficio (Mexico) JIS B4 JIS B5 Book Original Auto Size Sense Mixed Sizes	Specifies the paper size of the document **Note:** Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) Off Long edge Short edge	Specifies how the text and graphics are oriented on a page **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). • Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrai and left edge for landscape).

Menu item	Description
JPEG Quality Best for content 5–90	Sets the quality of a JPEG photo image in relation to file size and quality **Notes:** • "Best for content" is the factory default setting. • 5 reduces the file size, but the quality of the image is lessened. • 90 provides the best image quality, but the file size is very large. • This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Text Default 5–90	Sets the quality of the text in relation to file size and the quality of the image **Note:** 75 is the factory default setting.
Text/Photo Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a text/photo image in relation to file size and the quality **Note:** 75 is the factory default setting.
Photo Default 5–90	Sets the quality of a photo image in relation to file size and the quality **Note:** 50 is the factory default setting.
Use Multi-Page TIFF On Off	Provides a choice between single-page TIFF files and multiple-page TIFF files. For a multiple-page scan to FTP job, either one TIFF file is created containing all the pages, or multiple TIFF files are created with one file for each page. **Notes:** • On is the factory default setting. • This menu item applies to all scan functions.
Scan Bit Depth 8 bit 1 bit	Enables the Text/Photo mode to have smaller file sizes by using 1-bit images when Color is set to Off **Note:** 8 bit is the factory default setting.
File Name	Lets you enter a base file name **Note:** A maximum of 53 characters is allowed.
Custom Job Scanning Off On	Lets you copy a document containing mixed paper sizes in a single copy job **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Scan Preview Off On	Specifies whether a preview appears on the display for scan jobs **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Background Removal -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of background visible on a copy **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Balance Cyan - Red Magenta - Green Yellow - Blue	Enables an equal balance of colors in the scanned image

Menu item	Description
Color Dropout Color Dropout None Red Green Blue Default Red Threshold 0–255 Default Green Threshold 0–255 Default Blue Threshold 0–255	Specifies which color to drop during scanning, and how much to increase or decrease the dropout **Notes:** • None is the factory default setting for Color Dropout. • 128 is the factory default setting for each color threshold.
Contrast Best for content 0–5	Specifies the contrast of the scanned image **Note:** "Best for content" is the factory default setting.
Mirror Image Off On	Creates a mirror image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Negative Image Off On	Creates a negative image of the original document **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Shadow Detail -4 to 4	Adjusts the amount of shadow detail visible on a scanned image **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
ADF Skew Fix Off On	Specifies whether or not to fix slight skew on the scanned image **Note:** Off is the factory default setting
Scan edge to edge Off On	Specifies whether the original document is scanned edge-to-edge **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Sharpness 1–5	Adjusts the amount of sharpness on a scanned image **Note:** 3 is the factory default setting.
Temperature -4 to 4	Enables the user to specify "warm" or "cool" outputs. "Cool" values generate a bluer output than the default while "warm" values generate a redder output than the default.

Print Settings

Copies 1–999	Specifies a default number of copies for each print job **Note:** 1 is the factory default setting.

Paper Source Tray [x] Manual Paper MP Feeder Manual Envelope	Sets a default paper source for all print jobs **Note:** Tray 1 is the factory default setting.
Color Color Black Only	Generates color print jobs output **Note:** Color is the factory default setting.
Collate On (1,2,1,2,1,2) Off (1,1,1,2,2,2)	Stacks the pages of a print job in sequence when printing multiple copies **Note:** On is the factory default setting.
Sides (Duplex) 1 sided 2 sided	Specifies whether prints are on one side or on both sides of the page **Note:** 1 sided is the factory default setting.
Duplex Binding Long Edge Short Edge	Defines the way duplexed pages are bound and how the printing on the back of the page is oriented in relation to the printing on the front of the page **Notes:** • Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). • Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).
Paper Saver Orientation Auto Landscape Portrait	Specifies the orientation of a multiple-page document **Note:** Auto is the factory default setting. The printer chooses between portrait and landscape
Paper Saver Off 2-Up 3-Up 4-Up 6-Up 9-Up 12-Up 16-Up	Specifies that multiple-page images be printed on one side of a paper **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • The number selected is the number of page images that will print per side.
Paper Saver Border None Solid	Prints a border around each page image **Note:** None is the factory default setting.
Paper Saver Ordering Horizontal Reverse Horizontal Reverse Vertical Vertical	Specifies the positioning of multiple-page images **Notes:** • Horizontal is the factory default setting. • Positioning depends on the number of page images and whether they are in portrait or landscape orientation.

Separator Sheets None Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Specifies whether blank separator sheets are inserted **Notes:** • None is the factory default setting. • Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collate is set to On. If Collate is set to Off, then a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's. • Between Jobs inserts a blank sheet between print jobs. • Between Pages inserts a blank sheet between each page of the print job. This setting is useful when printing transparencies or when inserting blank pages in a document for notes.
Separator Sheet Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies the paper source for separator sheets **Notes:** • Tray 1 is the factory default setting. • From the Paper menu, Configure MP must be set to Cassette in order for Multipurpose Feeder to appear as a menu setting.
Blank Pages Do Not Print Print	Specifies whether blank pages are inserted in a print job **Note:** Do Not Print is the factory default setting.

Print Settings

Setup menu

Menu item	Description
Printer Language PS Emulation PCL Emulation	Sets the default printer language **Notes:** • PS Emulation is the factory default setting. PostScript emulation uses a PS interpreter for processing print jobs. • PCL Emulation uses a PCL interpreter for processing print jobs. • Setting a printer language default does not prevent a software program from sending print jobs that use another printer language.
Job Waiting Off On	Specifies if print jobs are removed from the print queue when they require unavailable printer options or custom settings. These print jobs are stored in a separate print queue, so other jobs print normally. When the missing information and/or options are obtained, the stored jobs print. **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • This menu item appears only if a non-read-only printer hard disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are not deleted if the printer loses power.

Menu item	Description
Print Area Normal Fit to Page Whole Page	Sets the logical and physical printable area **Notes:** • Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary. • Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size. • Whole Page allows the image to be moved into the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.
Black Only Mode Off On	Sets the printer to print text and graphics using only the black print cartridge **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Download Target RAM Flash Disk	Sets the storage location for downloads **Notes:** • RAM is the factory default setting. Storing downloads in RAM is temporary. • Storing downloads in flash memory or on a printer hard disk places them in permanent storage. Downloads remain in flash memory or on the printer hard disk even when the printer is turned off. • This menu item appears only if a flash and/or disk option is installed.
Resource Save Off On	Specifies how the printer handles temporary downloads, such as fonts and macros stored in RAM, when the printer receives a print job that requires more memory than is available **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. Off sets the printer to retain downloads only until memory is needed. Downloads are deleted in order to process print jobs. • On sets the printer to retain downloads during language changes and printer resets. If the printer runs out of memory, **`38 Memory Full`** appears, but downloads are not deleted.
Print All Order Alphabetical Oldest First Newest First	Specifies the order in which held and confidential jobs are printed when Print All is selected **Notes:** • Alphabetical is the factory default setting. • Print jobs always appear in alphabetical order on the printer control panel.

Finishing menu

Menu item	Description
Sides (Duplex) 1 sided 2 sided	Specifies whether duplex (2-sided) printing is set as the default for all print jobs **Notes:** • 1 sided is the factory default setting. • You can set 2-sided printing from the software program. For Windows users, click **File** > **Print**, and then click **Properties**, **Preferences**, **Options**, or **Setup**. For Macintosh users, choose **File** > **Print**, and then adjust the settings from the print dialog and pop-up menus.
Duplex Binding Long Edge Short Edge	Defines the way duplexed pages are bound and how the printing on the back of the page is oriented in relation to the printing on the front of the page **Notes:** • Long Edge is the factory default setting. Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape). • Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).
Copies 1–999	Specifies the default number of copies for each print job **Note:** 1 is the factory default setting.
Blank Pages Do Not Print Print	Specifies whether blank pages are inserted in a print job **Note:** Do Not Print is the factory default setting.
Collate Off (1,1,1,2,2,2) On (1,2,1,2,1,2)	Stacks the pages of a print job in sequence when printing multiple copies **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • On stacks the print job in sequence.
Separator Sheets None Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Specifies whether blank separator sheets are inserted **Notes:** • None is the factory default setting. • Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collate is set to On. If Collate is set to Off, a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's. • Between Jobs inserts a blank sheet between print jobs. • Between Pages inserts a blank sheet between each page of a print job. This setting is useful when printing transparencies or when inserting blank pages in a document.
Separator Source Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies the paper source for separator sheets **Notes:** • Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting. • From the Paper menu, Configure MP must be set to Cassette for Multi-Purpose Feeder to appear as a menu setting.

Menu item	Description
Paper Saver Off 2-Up 3-Up 4-Up 6-Up 9-Up 12-Up 16-Up	Specifies that multiple-page images be printed on one side of a paper **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • The number selected is the number of page images that will print per side.
Paper Saver Ordering Horizontal Reverse Horizontal Reverse Vertical Vertical	Specifies the positioning of multiple-page images when using Paper Saver **Notes:** • Horizontal is the factory default setting. • Positioning depends on the number of page images and whether they are in portrait or landscape orientation.
Paper Saver Orientation Auto Landscape Portrait	Specifies the orientation of a multiple-page document **Note:** Auto is the factory default setting. The printer chooses between portrait and landscape.
Paper Saver Border None Solid	Prints a border around each page image when using Paper Saver **Note:** None is the factory default setting.
Staple Job Off On	Specifies whether printed output is stapled **Note:** This menu item only appears if the printer is equipped with a stapler.
Hole Punch Off On	Specifies whether printed output has punched holes **Note:** This menu item only appears if the printer is equipped with a puncher.
Hole Punch Mode 2 holes 3 holes 4 holes	Determines the type of punch finishing performed on a printed output **Notes:** • 3 holes is the US factory default setting. 4 holes is the international factory default setting. • This menu item only appears if the printer is equipped with a puncher.
Offset Pages None Between Copies Between Jobs	Offsets pages at certain instances **Notes:** • None is the factory default setting. • Between Copies offsets each copy of a print job if Collate is set to On. If Collate is set to Off, each set of printed pages are offset, such as all page 1's and all page 2's. • Between Jobs sets the same offset position for the entire print job regardless of the number of copies printed. • This menu item only appears if a stapler option is installed.

Quality menu

Menu item	Description
Print Mode Color Black Only	Specifies whether images are printed in color or in black and white **Note:** Color is the factory default setting.
Color Correction Auto Off Manual	Adjusts the color output on the printed page **Notes:** • Auto is the factory default setting. Auto applies different color conversion tables to each object on the printed page. • Off turns off color correction. • Manual allows customization of the color tables using the settings available from the Manual Color menu. • Due to the differences in additive and subtractive colors, certain colors that appear on computer monitors are impossible to duplicate on the printed page.
Print Resolution 4800 CQ 1200 dpi	Specifies the printed output resolution **Note:** 4800 CQ is the factory default setting.
Toner Darkness 1–5	Lightens or darkens the printed output **Notes:** • 4 is the factory default setting. • Selecting a smaller number can help conserve toner. • If Print Mode is set to Black Only, then a setting of 5 increases toner density and darkness to all print jobs. • If Print Mode is set to Color, then a setting of 5 is the same as a setting of 4.
Enhance Fine Lines Off On	Enables a print mode preferable for files such as architectural drawings, maps, electrical circuit diagrams, and flow charts **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • You can set this option from the software program. For Windows users, click **File** > **Print** > **Properties** > **Preferences** > **Options**, or **Setup**. For Macintosh users, choose **File** > **Print**, and then adjust the settings from the print dialog and pop-up menus. • To set Enhance Fine Lines using the Embedded Web Server, type the network printer IP address in a browser window.
Color Saver Off On	Reduces the amount of toner used for graphics and images. The amount of toner used for text is not reduced. **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • On overrides Toner Darkness settings.

Menu item	Description
RGB Brightness -6 to 6	Adjusts brightness in color outputs **Notes:** • 0 is the factory default setting. • -6 is the maximum decrease. 6 is the maximum increase. • This does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are being used.
RGB Contrast 0–5	Adjusts contrast in color outputs **Notes:** • 0 is the factory default setting. • This does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are being used.
RGB Saturation 0–5	Adjusts saturation in color outputs **Notes:** • 0 is the factory default setting. • This does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are being used.
Color Balance Cyan -5 to 5 Magenta -5 to 5 Yellow -5 to 5 Black -5 to 5 Reset Defaults 0	Adjusts color in printed output by increasing or decreasing the amount of toner being used for each color **Note:** 0 is the factory default setting.
Color Samples sRGB Display sRGB Vivid Display—True Black Vivid Off—RGB US CMYK Euro CMYK Vivid CMYK Off—CMYK	Prints sample pages for each of the RGB and CMYK color conversion tables used in the printer **Notes:** • Selecting any setting prints the sample. • Color samples consist of a series of colored boxes along with the RGB or CMYK combination that creates the color observed. These pages can be used to help decide which combinations to use to get the desired printed output. • From a browser window, type the IP address of the printer to access a complete list of color sample pages from the Embedded Web Server.

Menu item	Description
Manual Color RGB Image Vivid sRGB Display Display True Black sRGB Vivid Off RGB Text Vivid sRGB Display Display True Black sRGB Vivid Off RGB Graphics Vivid sRGB Display Display True Black sRGB Vivid Off	Customizes the RGB color conversions **Notes:** • sRGB Display is the factory default setting for RGB Image. This applies a color conversion table to an output that matches the colors displayed on a computer monitor. • sRGB Vivid is the factory default setting for RGB Text and RGB Graphics. sRGB Vivid applies a color table that increases saturation. This is preferred for business graphics and text. • Vivid applies a color conversion table that produces brighter, more saturated colors. • Display—True Black applies a color conversion table that uses only black toner for neutral gray colors. • Off turns off color conversion.
Manual Color CMYK Image US CMYK Euro CMYK Vivid CMYK Off CMYK Text US CMYK Euro CMYK Vivid CMYK Off CMYK Graphics US CMYK Euro CMYK Vivid CMYK Off	Customizes the CMYK color conversions **Notes:** • US CMYK is the US factory default setting. US CMYK applies a color conversion table that tries to produce output that matches SWOP color output. • Euro CMYK is the international factory default setting. Euro CMYK applies a color conversion table that tries to produce output that matches EuroScale color output. • Vivid CMYK increases color saturation for the US CMYK color conversion table. • Off turns off color conversion.
Spot Color Replacement	Allows users to create and save custom spot colors with corresponding CMYK values
Color Adjust	Initiates a recalibration of color conversion tables and allows the printer to make adjustments for color variations in output **Notes:** • Adjusting color starts when the menu is selected. **`Adjusting`** appears on the display until the process is finished. • Color variations in output sometimes result from changeable conditions such as room temperature and humidity. Color adjustments are made on printer algorithms. Color alignment is also recalibrated in this process.

Utilities menu

Menu item	Description
Remove Held Jobs Confidential Held Not Restored All	Removes confidential and held jobs from the printer hard disk **Notes:** • Selecting a setting affects only print jobs that are resident in the printer. Bookmarks, print jobs on flash drives, and other types of held jobs are not affected. • Not Restored removes all Print and Hold jobs that are *not* restored from the printer hard disk or memory.
Format Flash Yes No	Formats the flash memory **Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not turn off the printer while the flash memory is being formatted. **Notes:** • Yes deletes all data stored in flash memory. • No cancels the format request. • Flash memory refers to the memory added by installing a flash memory option card in the printer. • A flash memory option card must be installed in the printer and operating properly for this menu item to be available. • The flash memory option card must not be read/write- or write-protected.
Delete Downloads on Disk Delete Now Do Not Delete	Removes downloads from the printer hard disk, including all held jobs, buffered jobs, and parked jobs **Notes:** • Delete Now configures the printer control panel to return to the originating screen after the deletion process is completed. • Do Not Delete sets the printer control panel to return to the main Utilities menu.
Activate Hex Trace	Assists in isolating the source of a print job problem **Notes:** • When activated, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation, and control codes are not executed. • To exit or deactivate Hex Trace, turn the printer off or reset the printer.
Coverage Estimator Off On	Provides an estimate of the percentage coverage of toner on a page. The estimate is printed on a separate page at the end of each print job. **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

PDF menu

Menu item	Description
Scale to Fit No Yes	Scales page content to fit the selected paper size **Note:** No is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
Annotations Do Not Print Print	Prints annotations in a PDF **Note:** Do Not Print is the factory default setting.

PostScript menu

Menu item	Description
Print PS Error Off On	Prints a page containing the PostScript error **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Lock PS Startup Mode Off On	Enables users to disable the SysStart file **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Font Priority Resident Flash/Disk	Establishes the font search order **Notes:** • Resident is the factory default setting. • This menu item is available only if a formatted flash memory option card or printer hard disk is installed and operating properly. • Make sure the flash memory option or printer hard disk is not read/write-, write-, or password-protected. • Job Buffer Size must not be set to 100%.
Image Smoothing Off On	Enhances the contrast and sharpness of low-resolution images and smooths their color transitions **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • Image Smoothing has no effect on images that are 300 dpi or higher in resolution.

PCL Emul menu

Menu item	Description
Font Source Resident Disk Download Flash All	Specifies the set of fonts used by the Font Name menu item **Notes:** • Resident is the factory default setting. It shows the factory default set of fonts downloaded in RAM. • Flash and Disk settings show all fonts resident in that option. Make sure the flash option is properly formatted and is not read/write-, or password-protected. • Download shows all the fonts downloaded in RAM. • All shows all fonts available to any option.

Menu item	Description
Font Name RO Courier	Identifies a specific font and where it is stored **Note:** RO Courier is the factory default setting. The RO Courier format shows the font name, font ID, and storage location in the printer. The font source abbreviation is R for Resident, F for Flash, K for Disk, and D for Download.
Symbol Set 10U PC-8 12U PC-850	Specifies the symbol set for each font name **Notes:** • 10U PC-8 is the US factory default setting. 12U PC-850 is the international factory default setting. • A symbol set is a set of alphabetical and numeric characters, punctuation, and special symbols. Symbol sets support the different languages or specific programs such as math symbols for scientific text. Only the supported symbol sets are shown.
PCL Emulation Settings Point Size 1.00–1008.00	Changes the point size for scalable typographic fonts **Notes:** • 12 is the factory default setting. • Point Size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 1/72 of an inch. • Point sizes can be increased or decreased in 0.25-point increments.
PCL Emulation Settings Pitch 0.08–100	Specifies the font pitch for scalable monospaced fonts **Notes:** • 10 is the factory default setting. • Pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters per inch (cpi). • Pitch can be increased or decreased in 0.01-cpi increments. • For non-scalable monospaced fonts, the pitch appears on the display but cannot be changed.
PCL Emulation Settings Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specifies the orientation of text and graphics on a page **Notes:** • Portrait is the factory default setting. • Portrait prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the page. • Landscape prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the page.
PCL Emulation Settings Lines per Page 1–255	Specifies the number of lines that print on each page **Notes:** • 60 is the US factory default setting. 64 is the international default setting. • The printer sets the amount of space between each line based on the Lines per Page, Paper Size, and Orientation settings. Select the desired Paper Size and Orientation before setting Lines per Page.

Menu item	Description
PCL Emulation Settings A4 Width 198 mm 203 mm	Sets the printer to print on A4-size paper **Notes:** • 198 mm is the factory default setting. • The 203-mm setting sets the width of the page to allow the printing of eighty 10-pitch characters.
PCL Emulation Settings Auto CR after LF Off On	Specifies whether the printer automatically performs a carriage return (CR) after a line feed (LF) control command **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
PCL Emulation Settings Auto LF after CR Off On	Specifies whether the printer automatically performs a line feed (LF) after a carriage return (CR) control command **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.
Tray Renumber Assign MP Feeder Off None 0–199 Assign Tray [x] Off None 0–199 Assign Manual Paper Off None 0–199 Assign Manual Env Off None 0–199	Configures the printer to work with printer software or programs that use different source assignments for trays, drawers, and feeders **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • None ignores the Select Paper Feed command. This selection is displayed only when it is selected by the PCL 5e interpreter. • 0–199 allows a custom setting to be assigned.
Tray Renumber View Factory Defaults MPF Default = 8 T1 Default = 1 T2 Default = 4 T3 Default = 5 T4 Default = 20 T5 Default = 21 Env Default = 6 MPaper Default = 2 MEnv Default = 3	Displays the factory default setting assigned to each tray, drawer, or feeder

Menu item	Description
Tray Renumber Restore Defaults Yes No	Returns all tray, drawer, and feeder assignments to the factory default settings

HTML menu

Menu Item		Description
Font Name Albertus MT Antique Olive Apple Chancery Arial MT Avant Garde Bodoni Bookman Chicago Clarendon Cooper Black Copperplate Coronet Courier Eurostile Garamond Geneva Gill Sans Goudy Helvetica Hoefler Text Intl CG Times Intl Courier Intl Univers	Joanna MT Letter Gothic Lubalin Graph Marigold MonaLisa Recut Monaco New CenturySbk New York Optima Oxford Palatino StempelGaramond Taffy Times TimesNewRoman Univers Zapf Chancery NewSansMTCS NewSansMTCT New SansMTJA NewSansMTKO	Sets the default font for HTML documents **Note:** The Times font is used in HTML documents that do not specify a font.

Menu item	Description
Font Size 1–255 pt	Sets the default font size for HTML documents **Notes:** • 12 pt is the factory default setting. • Font size can be increased in 1-point increments.
Scale 1–400%	Scales the default font for HTML documents **Notes:** • 100% is the factory default setting. • Scaling can be increased in 1% increments.

Menu item	Description
Orientation Portrait Landscape	Sets the page orientation for HTML documents **Note:** Portrait is the factory default setting.
Margin Size 8–255 mm	Sets the page margin for HTML documents **Notes:** • 19 mm is the factory default setting. • Margin size can be increased in 1-mm increments.
Backgrounds Print Do Not Print	Specifies whether to print backgrounds on HTML documents **Note:** Print is the factory default setting.

Image menu

Menu item	Description
Auto Fit On Off	Selects the optimal paper size, scaling, and orientation **Note:** On is the factory default setting. It overrides scaling and orientation settings for some images.
Invert Off On	Inverts bi-tonal monochrome images **Notes:** • Off is the factory default setting. • This setting does not apply to GIF or JPEG images.
Scaling Best Fit Anchor Center Fit Height/Width Fit Height Fit Width Anchor Top Left	Scales the image to fit the selected paper size **Notes:** • Best Fit is the factory default setting. • When Auto Fit is set to On, Scaling is automatically set to Best Fit.
Orientation Portrait Landscape Rev Portrait Rev Landscape	Sets the image orientation **Note:** Portrait is the factory default setting.

XPS menu

Menu item	Description
Print Error Pages Off On	Prints a page containing information on errors, including XML markup errors **Note:** Off is the factory default setting.

Help menu

The Help menu consists of a series of Help pages that are stored in the multifunction printer (MFP) as PDF files. They contain information about using the printer and performing various tasks, including copying, scanning, and faxing.

English, French, German, and Spanish translations are stored in the printer.

Other translations are available on the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com**.

Menu item	Description
Print All Guides	Prints all the guides
Copy Guide	Provides information about making copies and changing settings
E-mail Guide	Provides information about sending e-mails using addresses, shortcut numbers, or the address book, and about changing settings
Fax Guide	Provides information about sending faxes using fax numbers, shortcut numbers, or the address book, and about changing settings
FTP Guide	Provides information about scanning documents directly to an FTP server using an FTP address, shortcut numbers, or the address book, and about changing settings
Print Defects Guide	Provides help in resolving repeating defects in copies or prints
Information Guide	Provides help in locating additional information
Supplies Guide	Provides part numbers for ordering supplies

Securing the printer hard disk and other installed memory

Statement of Volatility

Your printer contains various types of memory that are capable of storing device and network settings, information from embedded solutions, and user data. The types of memory—along with the types of data stored by each—are described below.

- **Volatile memory**—Your device utilizes standard *Random Access Memory* (RAM) to temporarily buffer user data during simple print and copy jobs.
- **Non-volatile memory**—Your device may utilize two forms of non-volatile memory: EEPROM and NAND (flash memory). Both types are used to store the operating system, device settings, network information, scanner and bookmark settings, and embedded solutions.
- **Hard disk memory**—Some devices have a hard disk drive installed. The printer hard disk is designed for device-specific functionality and cannot be used for long term storage for data that is not print-related. The hard disk does not provide the capability for users to extract information, create folders, create disk or network file shares, or FTP information directly from a client device. The hard disk can retain buffered user data from complex scan, print, copy, and fax jobs, as well as form data, and font data.

There are several circumstances under which you might wish to erase the contents of the memory devices installed in your printer. A partial list includes:

- The printer is being decommissioned
- The printer hard drive is being replaced
- The printer is being moved to a different department or location
- The printer is being serviced by someone from outside your organization
- The printer is being removed from your premises for service

Disposing of a hard drive

Note: Not all printers have a hard disk installed.

In high-security environments, it may be necessary to take additional steps to ensure that confidential data stored on the printer hard disk cannot be accessed once the printer—or its hard disk—is removed from your premises. While most data can be erased electronically, you may want to consider one or more of the following actions before disposing of a printer or hard disk:

- **Degaussing**—Flushes the hard drive with a magnetic field that erases stored data
- **Crushing**—Physically compresses the hard disk to break component parts and render them unreadable
- **Milling**—Physically shreds the hard disk into small metal bits

Note: While most data can be erased electronically, the only way to guarantee that all data is completely erased is to physically destroy each memory device on which data could have been stored.

Erasing volatile memory

The volatile memory (RAM) installed on your printer requires a power source to retain information. To erase the buffered data, simply power down the device.

Erasing non-volatile memory

There are several methods available for erasing data stored in non-volatile memory, depending on the type of memory device installed, and the type of data stored by that device. For information about how to erase each type of information, see the *Embedded Web Server Administrator Guide*.

- **Individual settings**—You can erase individual printer settings using the printer control panel, or the printer Embedded Web Server.
- **Device and network settings**—You can erase device and network settings and restore factory defaults by resetting the NVRAM using the printer Config menu.
- **Security settings**—You can restore factory defaults or erase security settings by selecting a behavior for the Security Reset Jumper in the Embedded Web Server, and then moving a hardware jumper located on the motherboard.
- **Fax data**—If your printer does not contain a hard disk, or you have chosen NAND for fax storage, you can erase fax settings and data by resetting the NVRAM using the printer Config menu.

  Note: If your printer has a hard disk that has been partitioned for fax storage, you must reformat that partition to erase fax data and settings.
- **Embedded solutions**—You can erase information and settings associated with embedded solutions by uninstalling the solutions, or by restoring factory defaults using the printer Config menu.

Erasing printer hard disk memory

Note: Not all printers have a hard disk installed.

Configuring Disk Wiping in the printer menus enables you to remove residual confidential material left by scan, print, copy, and fax jobs, by securely overwriting files that have been marked for deletion.

Using the Embedded Web Server

1. From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings** > **Security** > **Disk Wiping**.

   Note: Printers without a hard disk will not display Disk Wiping in the Security menu.
2. For Wiping Mode, select one of the following:
   - **Auto**—Use this to automatically wipe data following each use (can increase the time between jobs).
   - **Manual**—Use this to set up a schedule for disk wiping.
3. Click **Submit**.
4. From the Security menu, click **Disk Wiping**.
5. If you have enabled Manual mode and wish to set up a schedule for disk wiping, click **Scheduled Disk Wiping**.

Notes:

- Scheduled Disk Wiping will not be displayed until after Manual mode has been selected and submitted.
- If you do not wish to schedule disk wiping, you can skip steps 5 and 6.

6 Use the Time and Day(s) options to designate when disk wiping should occur, and then click **Add**. Repeat as needed to schedule additional times for disk wiping. When finished, use the browser Back button to return to the Disk Wiping setup screen.

Note: Disk wiping can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which time the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.

7 From the Disk Wiping settings screen, select one of the following for each method of disk wiping (Automatic, Manual, and Scheduled):

- **Single Pass**— This lets you overwrite the printer hard disk in a single pass with a repeating bit pattern.
- **Multi-pass**—This lets you overwrite the printer hard disk with random bit patterns several times, followed by a verification pass. A secure overwrite is compliant with the DoD 5220.22-M standard for securely erasing data from a hard disk. Highly confidential information should be wiped using this method.

8 Click **Submit**.

Using the printer control panel

1 Turn the printer off.

2 Hold down 2 and 6 while turning the printer on. It takes approximately a minute to boot into the Configuration menu.

Once the printer is fully powered up, the touch screen should display a list of functions, instead of standard home screen icons such as Copy or Fax.

3 Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears. The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.

4 Touch **Wipe Disk**, and then touch one of the following:

- **Wipe disk (fast)**—This lets you overwrite the disk with all zeroes in a single pass.
- **Wipe disk (secure)**—This lets you overwrite the disk with random bit patterns several times, followed by a verification pass. A secure overwrite is compliant with the DoD 5220.22-M standard for securely erasing data from a hard disk. Highly confidential information should be wiped using this method.

5 Touch **Yes** to proceed with disk wiping. A status bar will indicate the progress of the disk wiping task.

Note: Disk wiping can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.

6 Touch **Back**, and then **Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

Configuring printer hard disk encryption

Note: Not all printers have a hard disk installed.

Enabling hard disk encryption helps prevent the loss of sensitive data in the event your printer or its hard disk is stolen.

1. Turn the printer off.
2. Hold down 2 and 6 while turning the printer on. It takes approximately a minute to boot into the Configuration menu.

   Once the printer is fully on, the touch screen should display a list of functions, instead of standard home screen icons such as Copy or Fax.
3. Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears. The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.
4. Touch **Disk Encryption** > **Enable**.

   Warning: Enabling disk encryption will erase the contents of the printer hard disk.
5. Touch **Yes** to proceed with disk wiping. A status bar will indicate the progress of the disk wiping task.

   After the disk has been encrypted, the printer will return to the Enable/Disable screen.

   Warning: Do not turn off the printer during the encryption process. Doing so may result in loss of data.

   Note: Disk encryption can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.

   - Touch **Yes** to proceed with disk wiping and encryption. A status bar will indicate the progress of the encryption task.
6. Touch **Back**, and then **Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

Maintaining the printer

Periodically, certain tasks are required to maintain optimum print quality.

Cleaning the exterior of the printer

1. Make sure that the printer is turned off and unplugged from the wall outlet.

   CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD: To avoid the risk of electric shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet and disconnect all cables to the printer before proceeding.

2. Remove paper from the standard exit bin.

3. Dampen a clean, lint-free cloth with water.

   Warning—Potential Damage: Do not use household cleaners or detergents, as they may damage the finish of the printer.

4. Wipe only the outside of the printer, making sure to include the standard exit bin.

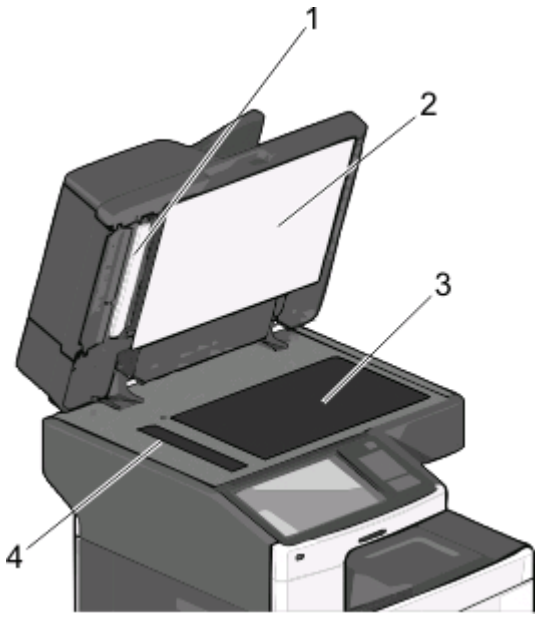
   Warning—Potential Damage: Using a damp cloth to clean the interior may cause damage to your printer.

5. Make sure the paper support and standard exit bin are dry before beginning a new print job.

Cleaning the scanner glass

Clean the scanner glass if you encounter print quality problems, such as streaks on copied or scanned images.

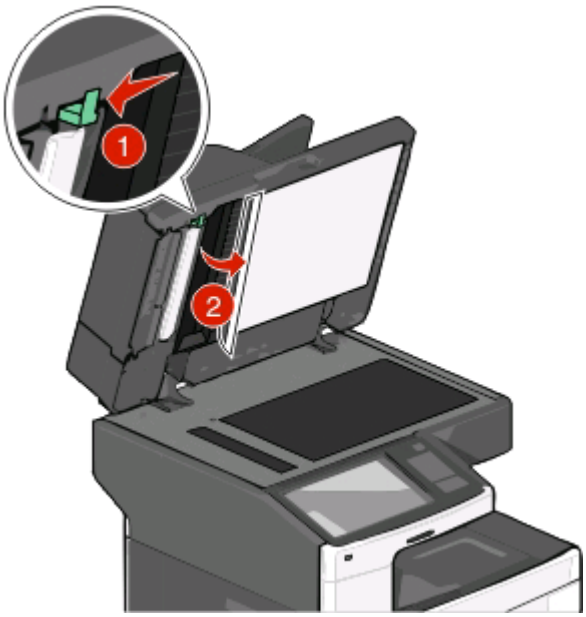
1. Slightly dampen a soft, lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.
2. Open the scanner cover.



1	White underside of the ADF cover
2	White underside of the scanner cover
3	Scanner glass
4	ADF glass

3. Wipe the areas shown and let them dry.

4 Open the bottom ADF door.



5 Wipe the ADF scanner glass under the ADF door.

6 Close the bottom ADF door.

7 Close the scanner cover.

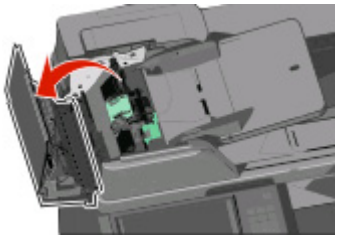
Cleaning the ADF parts

Clean the ADF parts periodically to maintain optimal printing performance. Residue on the ADF parts may cause print quality issues and false 280–299 paper jam messages.

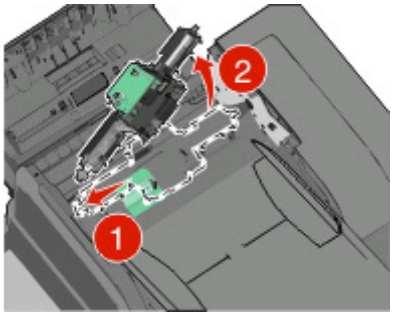
1 Turn the printer off.

2 Slightly dampen a soft, lint-free cloth with water.

3 Open the ADF cover.

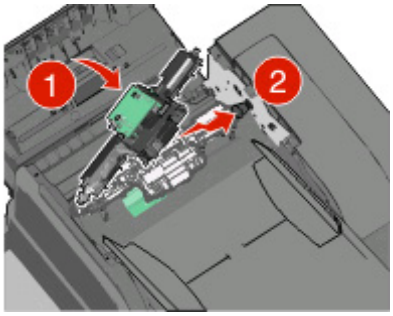


4 Remove the pick roller assembly.



5 Wipe the surface of both pick rollers.

6 Replace the pick roller assembly.



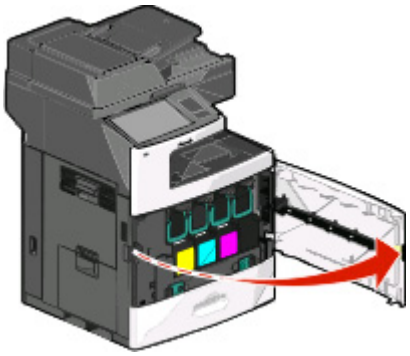
7 Wipe the entire surface under the ADF cover.

8 Close the ADF cover.

Cleaning the printhead lenses

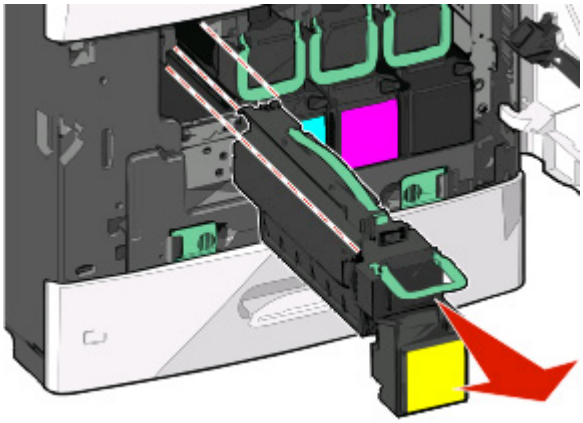
Clean the printhead lenses when you encounter print quality problems.

1 Open the front door.

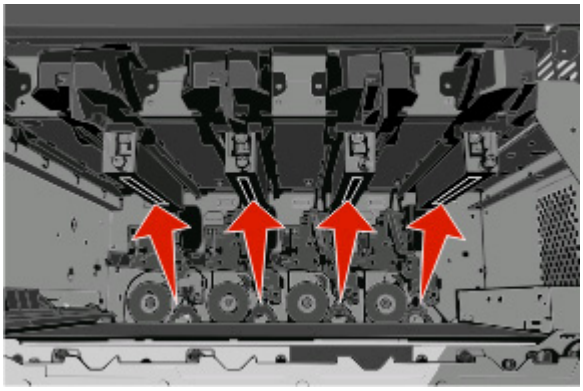


2 Remove all print cartridges.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the shiny area on the photoconductor drum. Doing so can damage the photoconductor.



3 Locate the four printhead lenses.

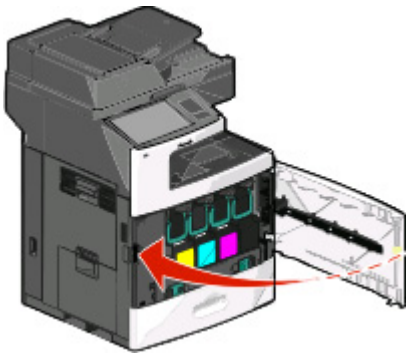


4 Clean the lenses using compressed air.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the printhead lenses.

5 Reinstall the print cartridges.

6 Close the front door.



Adjusting scanner registration

Scanner Registration lets you align the scan area with the paper location.

1 Turn the printer off.

2 Clean the scanner glass and backing material.

For more information, see “Cleaning the scanner glass” on page 223.

3 Hold down 2 and 6 while turning the printer on.

4 Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.

5 From the Configuration menu, navigate to:

Scanner Manual Registration > **Print Quick Test**

6 Align the scanner glass or ADF.

Aligning the scanner glass:

a Place the Quick Test page facedown on the scanner glass.

b Touch **Copy Quick Test**.

The scanner prints a copy of the Quick Test page.

c Touch **Flatbed**.

d Use the copy of the Quick Test page to adjust the Left Margin and Top Margin settings.

e Touch **Submit** > **Copy Quick Test**.

f Compare the new copy to the original.

Repeat the scanner glass alignment steps until the position on the page of the Quick Test copy closely matches the original.

Aligning the ADF:

a Do one of the following:

- To align the ADF front: place the Quick Test page faceup, short edge first into the ADF.
- To align the ADF back: place the Quick Test page facedown, short edge first into the ADF.

b Touch **Copy Quick Test**.

The scanner prints a copy of the Quick Test page.

c Touch **ADF Front** or **ADF Back**.

d Use the copy of the Quick Test page to adjust the Horizontal Adjust and Top Margin settings.

e Touch **Submit** > **Copy Quick Test**.

f Compare the new copy to the original.

Repeat the ADF alignment steps until the position on the page of the Quick Test copy closely matches the original.

7 Touch **Back** > **Exit Configuration**.

Storing supplies

Choose a cool, clean storage area for the printer supplies. Store supplies right side up in their original packing until you are ready to use them.

Do not expose supplies to:

- Direct sunlight
- Temperatures above 35°C (95°F)
- High humidity above 80%
- Salty air
- Corrosive gases
- Heavy dust

Checking the status of supplies

A message appears on the display when a replacement supply item is needed or when maintenance is required.

Checking the status of supplies from the printer control panel

From the home screen, touch **Status/Supplies** > **View Supplies**.

Checking the status of supplies from a network computer

Note: The computer must be connected to the same network as the printer.

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Device Status**.

   The Device Status page appears, displaying a summary of supply levels.

Ordering supplies

To order supplies in the U.S., contact Lexmark at 1-800-539-6275 for information about Lexmark authorized supplies dealers in your area. In other countries or regions, visit the Lexmark Web Site at **www.lexmark.com** or contact the place where you purchased the printer.

Notes:

- The toner gauge is an estimate of how much toner is left in your cartridge.
- All life estimates for printer supplies assume printing on letter- or A4-size plain paper.

Ordering a print cartridge

When `88 [color] cartridge low` or `88 [color] cartridge nearly low` appears, order a new cartridge.

Estimated cartridge yield is based on the ISO/IEC 19798 standard. Extremely low print coverage (less than 1.25%) for extended periods of time may negatively affect actual yield and may cause cartridge parts to fail prior to exhaustion of toner.

Recommended print cartridge and part number

Part name	Lexmark Return Program Cartridge	Regular cartridge
Cyan Print Cartridge	C792A1CG	C792A2CG
Cyan Extra High Yield Print Cartridge	C792X1CG	C792X2CG
Magenta Print Cartridge	C792A1MG	C792A2MG
Magenta Extra High Yield Print Cartridge	C792X1MG	C792X2MG
Yellow Print Cartridge	C792A1YG	C792A2YG
Yellow Extra High Yield Print Cartridge	C792X1YG	C792X2YG
Black Print Cartridge	C792A1KG	C792A2KG
Black Extra High Yield Print Cartridge	C792X1KG	C792X2KG

Ordering a fuser or a transfer module

When **80 Fuser Life Warning** or **83 Transfer Module Life Warning** appears, order a replacement fuser or a transfer module.

When **80 Replace Fuser** or **83 Replace Transfer Module** appears, install the new fuser or the new transfer module. For installation information, see the documentation that came with the part.

Part name	Part number
Fuser	40X7102 40X7100 40X7101
Transfer Module	40X7103

Ordering a waste toner bottle

When **82 Waste toner bottle nearly full** appears, order a replacement waste toner bottle.

When **82 Replace waste toner bottle** appears, replace the waste toner bottle.

Note: Waste toner bottle reuse is not recommended.

Part name	Part number
Waste toner bottle	C792X77G

Ordering staple cartridges

When **Staples Low** or **Staples Empty** appears, order the specified staple cartridge.

For more information, see the illustrations inside the stapler door.

Part name	Part number
Staple Cartridges–3 pack (Since a pack contains 5,000 staples, a 3-pack contains 15,000 staples.)	25A0013

Ordering ADF replacement parts

Order ADF replacement parts if you experience problems with paper double-feeding or failing to feed through the ADF.

Part name	Part number
ADF pick assembly	40X4540
Separator roll	40X4605

Ordering a cleaning kit

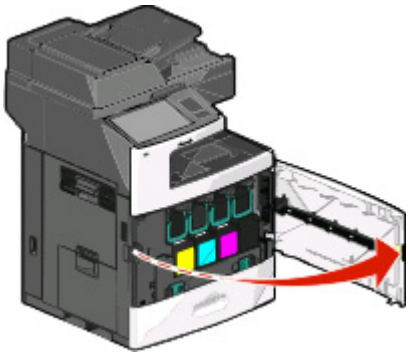
Use the wet and dry wipes from the cleaning kit to clean the touch screen.

Part name	Part number
Cleaning kit (wet and dry wipes)	40X0392

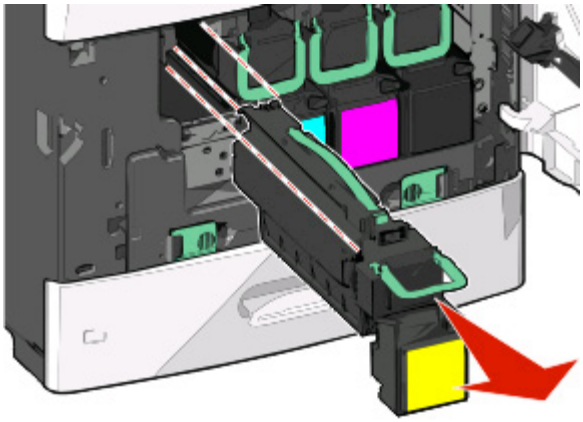
Replacing supplies

Replacing a print cartridge

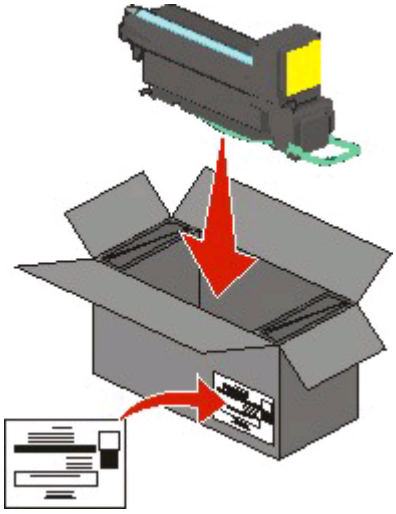
1 Open the front door.



2 Lift the green handle and pull the print cartridge. Grasp the top handle and lift the cartridge out of the machine.

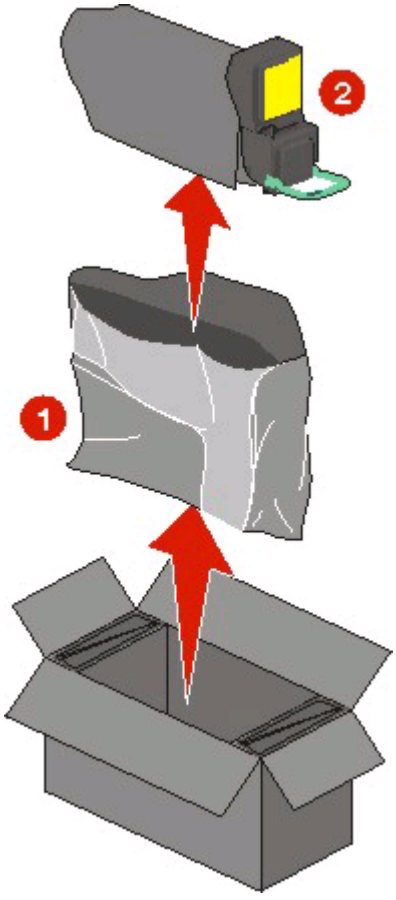


3 Place the old cartridge in the replacement cartridge shipping box, and then attach the return label to the box for shipping.

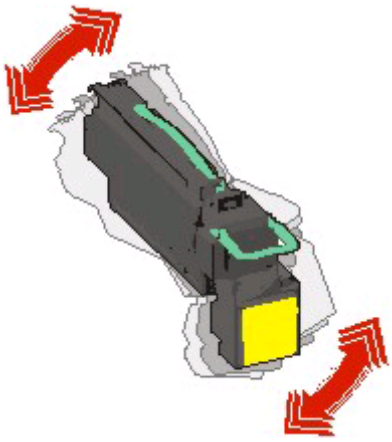


4 Unpack a new print cartridge.

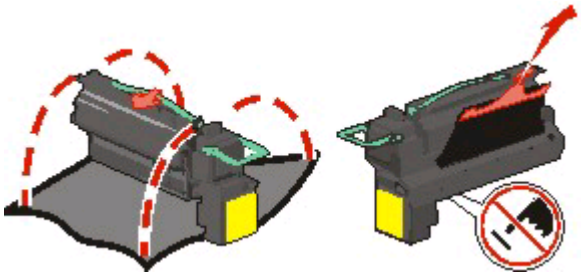
Warning—Potential Damage: Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.



5 Shake the new cartridge front-to-back and side-to-side to evenly distribute the toner.

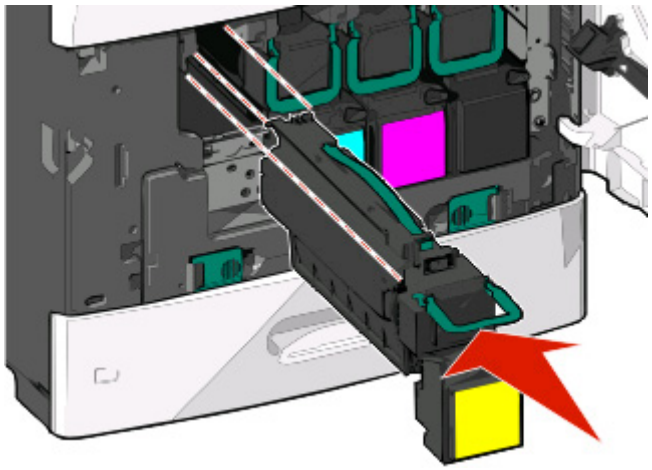


6 Remove the red packing strip from the new cartridge.

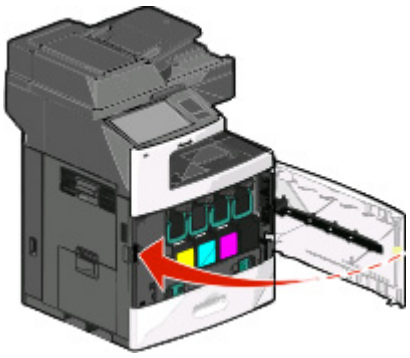


7 Insert the new cartridge into the printer, and then push the green handle back in place.

Note: Make sure the cartridge is fully pushed in.



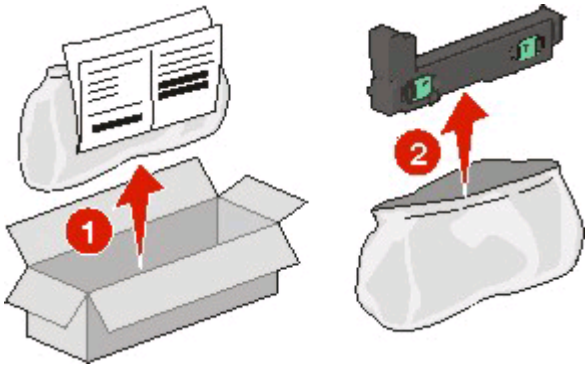
8 Close the front door.



Replacing the waste toner bottle

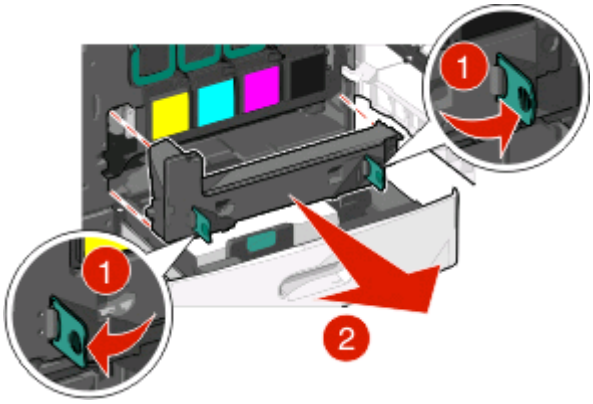
Replace the waste toner bottle when **`82.xx Replace waste toner bottle`** appears. The printer will not continue printing until the waste toner bottle is replaced.

1 Remove the replacement waste toner bottle from its shipping box, and then unpack it.



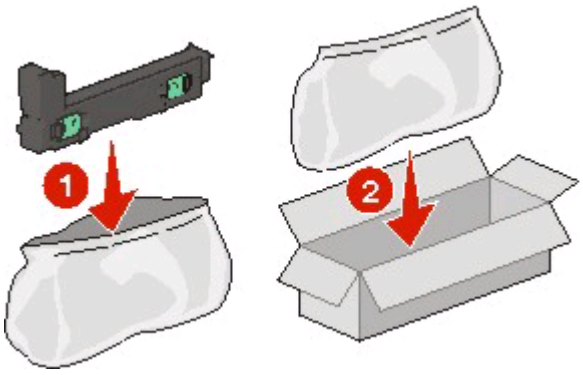
2 Open the printer front door, and then open tray 1.

3 Pull the green tabs sideways, and then grasp and pull the tabs with both hands to remove the waste toner bottle.

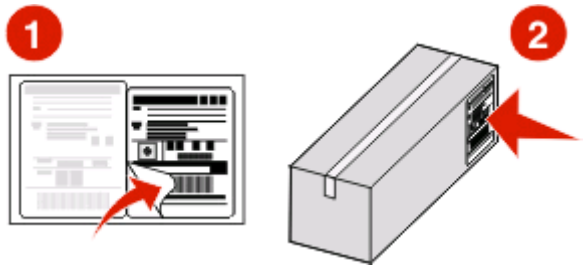


4 Place the waste toner bottle in the recycling bag.

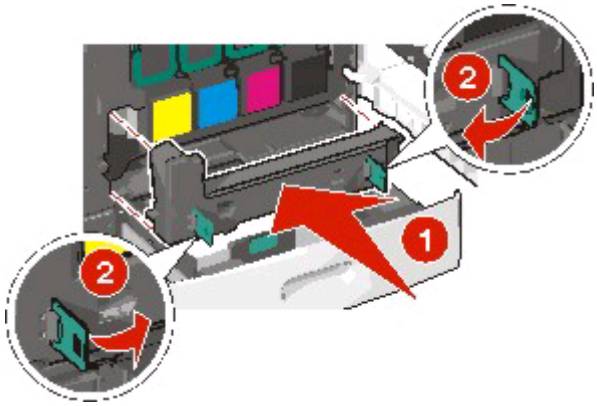
5 Place the bag into the shipping box you removed the replacement part from.



6 Peel the recycling label off, and place it on the shipping box.



7 Insert the new waste toner bottle into the printer.



8 Close tray 1, and then close the front door.

Moving the printer

Before moving the printer

⚠ **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

⚠ **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Before moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Turn the printer off using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer before moving it.
- Lift the printer off of the optional drawer and set it aside instead of trying to lift the drawer and printer at the same time.

  Note: Use the handholds located on both sides of the printer to lift it off the optional drawer.

Warning—Potential Damage: Damage to the printer caused by improper moving is not covered by the printer warranty.

Moving the printer to another location

The printer and options can be safely moved to another location by following these precautions:

- Any cart used to move the printer must have a surface able to support the full footprint of the printer. Any cart used to move the options must have a surface able to support the dimensions of the options.
- Keep the printer in an upright position.
- Avoid severe jarring movements.

Shipping the printer

When shipping the printer, use the original packaging or call the place of purchase for a relocation kit.

Administrative support

Finding advanced networking and administrator information

This chapter covers basic administrative support tasks using the Embedded Web Server. For more advanced system support tasks, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD and the *Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide* on the Lexmark Web site at **http://support.lexmark.com**.

Using the Embedded Web Server

If the printer is installed on a network, then the Embedded Web Server is available for a range of functions including:

- Viewing a virtual display of the printer control panel
- Checking the status of the printer supplies
- Configuring printer settings
- Configuring network settings
- Viewing reports

To access the Embedded Web Server for your printer:

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   Notes:

   - If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page, and then locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
   - If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Embedded Web Server correctly.

2. Press **Enter**.

Checking the status of the printer

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2. Click **Device Status**.

The device status shows the following:

- Paper tray settings
- Level of toner in the print cartridge
- Percentage of life remaining in the maintenance kit
- Capacity measurements of certain printer parts

Checking the virtual display

1. Open an Embedded Web Server associated with your printer.

   Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
2. Check the virtual display that appears in the top left corner of the screen.

   The virtual display works as an actual display would work on a printer control panel, showing printer messages.

Setting up e-mail alerts

Configure the printer to send you e-mail alerts when the supplies are getting low or when the paper needs to be changed or added, or when there is a paper jam.

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
2. Click **Settings**.
3. Under Other Settings, click **E-mail Alert Setup**.
4. Select the items for notification, and type the e-mail addresses.
5. Click **Submit**.

Note: For information on setting up the e-mail server, contact your system support person.

Viewing reports

You can view some reports from the Embedded Web Server. These reports are useful for assessing the status of the printer, the network, and supplies.

To view reports from a network printer:

1. Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
2. Click **Reports**, and then click the type of report you want to view.

Restoring factory default settings

If you want to retain a list of the current menu settings for reference, then print a menu settings page before restoring the factory default settings.

Warning—Potential Damage: Restoring factory defaults returns most printer settings to the original factory default settings. Exceptions include the display language, custom sizes and messages, and network/port menu settings. All downloads stored in RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in flash memory or on a printer hard disk are not affected.

From the home screen, navigate to:

> **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Factory Defaults** > **Restore Now** > **Submit**

Clearing jams

By carefully selecting paper and loading it properly, you can avoid most jams. If jams do occur, follow the steps outlined in this section.

To clear a jam message and resume printing, clear the entire paper path, and then touch **Continue, jam cleared**. If Jam Recovery is set to On, then the printer prints a new copy of the page that jammed. If Jam Recovery is set to Auto, then the printer reprints the jammed page if enough printer memory is available.

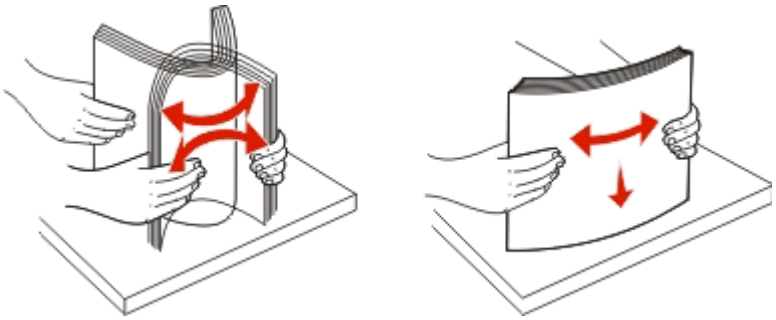
Avoiding jams

Paper tray recommendations

- Make sure the paper lies flat in the tray.
- Do not remove a tray while the printer is printing.
- Do not load a tray while the printer is printing. Load it prior to printing, or wait for a prompt to load it.
- Do not load too much paper. Make sure the stack height does not exceed the indicated maximum height.
- Make sure the guides in the tray or the multipurpose feeder are properly positioned and are not pressing too tightly against the paper or envelopes.
- Push the tray in firmly after loading paper.

Paper recommendations

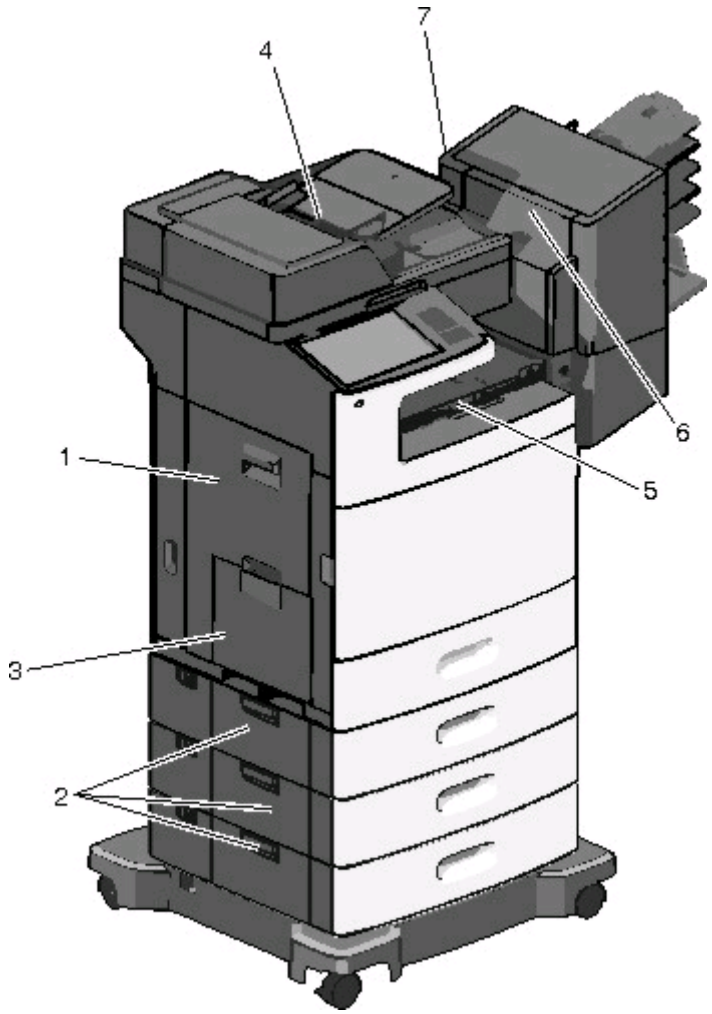
- Use only recommended paper or specialty media.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, bent, or curled paper.
- Flex and straighten paper before loading it.



- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, weights, or types in the same stack.
- Make sure all sizes and types are set correctly in the printer control panel menus.
- Store paper per manufacturer recommendations.

Understanding jam numbers and locations

When a jam occurs, a message indicating the jam location appears on the display. Open doors and covers and remove trays to access jam locations. To resolve any paper jam message, you must clear all jammed paper from the paper path.



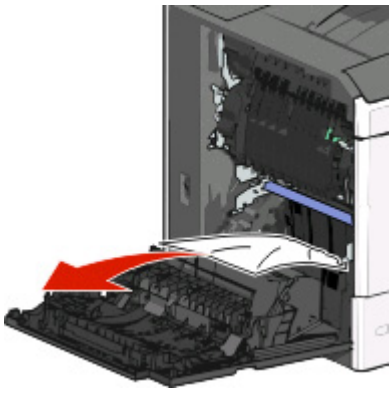
Area	Jam numbers	What to do
1	**200–239**	Open side door, and then remove the jammed paper.
2	**24x**	Open side door of the specified tray, and then remove the jammed paper.
3	**250**	Remove all paper from the multipurpose feeder, and them remove the jammed paper.
4	**280–289**	Remove all paper from the ADF, and them remove the jammed paper.
	290–292	Close the ADF cover.
5	**400–403** **460–461**	Open the paper transport unit door, and then remove the jammed paper.
6	**431–438**	Push the button to slide the finisher to the right, open the finisher door, and then remove the jammed paper.
7	**455**	Open staple door, remove the staple cartridge, and then remove the jammed staple.

200 paper jam

1 Open the side door of the printer.

CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.



Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

3 Close the side door of the printer.

4 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

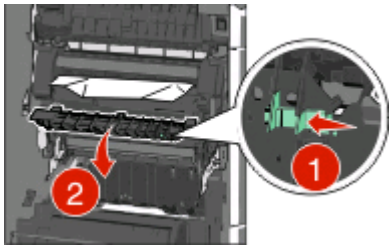
201 paper jam

1 Open the side door of the printer.

CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 Determine where the jam is located, and then remove it:

a If paper is inside the fuser unit, then open the fuser access door.



b Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the center of the fuser unit. Doing so will damage the fuser.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

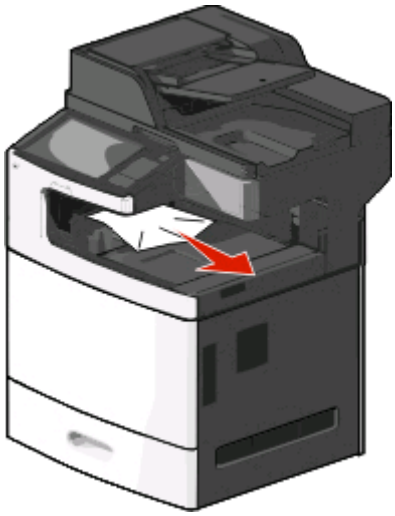
3 Close the side door of the printer.

4 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

202–203 paper jams

If paper is visible in the standard exit bin, then firmly grasp the paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

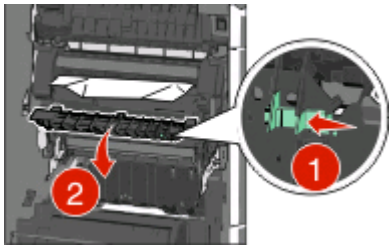


Paper jam in the fuser

1 Open the side door of the printer.

CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 If paper is visible inside the fuser unit, then open the fuser access door.



3 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Warning—Potential Damage: Do not touch the center of the fuser unit. Doing so will damage the fuser.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

4 Close the side door.

Paper jam under the fuser

1 Open the side door of the printer.

CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 If paper is visible under the fuser, then firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

3 Close the side door of the printer.

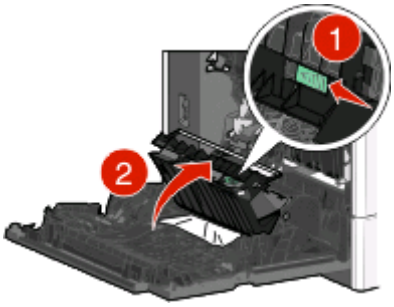
4 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

230 paper jam

1 Open the side door of the printer.

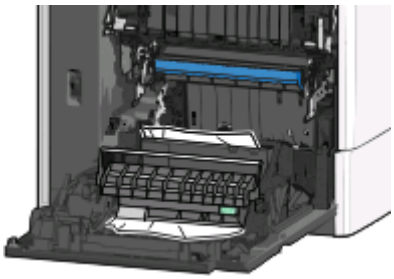
CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 Slide the latch to open the duplex cover.



3 Grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



4 Close the duplex cover.

5 Close the side door of the printer.

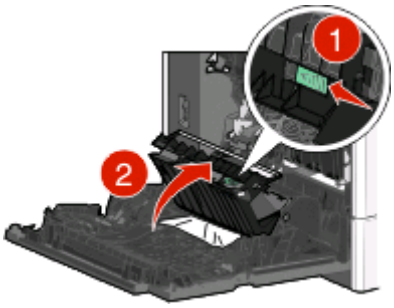
6 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

231–239 paper jams

1 Open the side door of the printer.

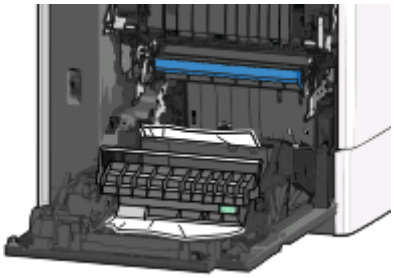
CAUTION—HOT SURFACE: The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

2 Slide the latch to open the duplex cover.



3 Grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



4 Close the duplex cover.

5 Close the side door of the printer.

6 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

24x paper jam

Paper jam in Tray 1

1 Open the side door.

2 Grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

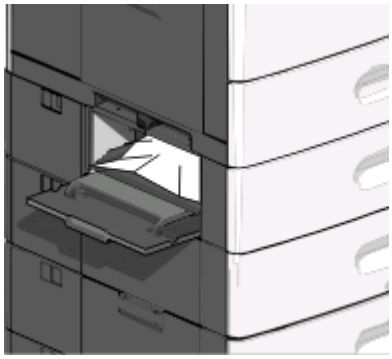
3 Close the side door.

4 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

Paper jam in the optional trays

1 Open the side door of the specified optional tray.

2 Grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

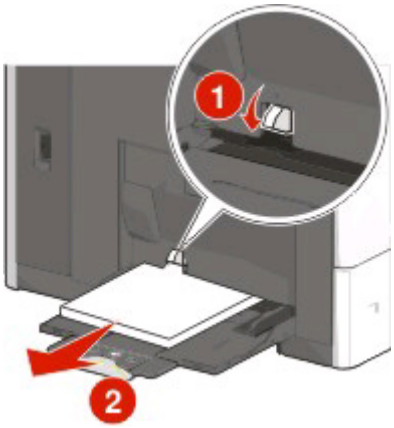


3 Close the side door.

4 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

250 paper jam

1 Push the paper pick tab, and then remove all paper from the multipurpose feeder.



Warning—Potential Damage: Pulling the paper out, without pushing the paper pick tab first, may cause the paper pick tab to break.

2 Grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

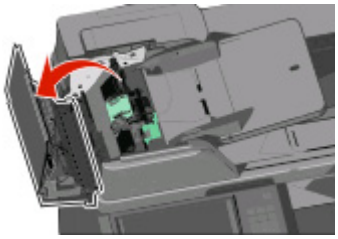
3 Reload paper into the multipurpose feeder, and then adjust the paper guides.

4 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

280–289 paper jams

1 Remove all original documents from the ADF.

2 Open the ADF cover.



3 Grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

4 Close the ADF cover.

5 Reload original documents into the ADF, straighten the stack, and then adjust the paper guide.

6 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

290–292 paper jams

290 paper jam

Close the ADF cover.

291 paper jam

Close the scanner glass cover.

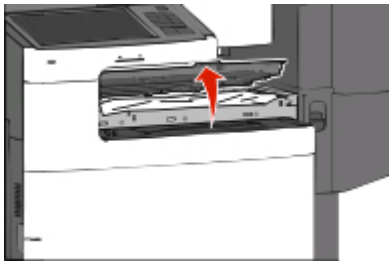
292 paper jam

Try one of more of the following:

- Close the ADF cover.
- Close the scanner cover.
- Contact your system support system person.

400–403 and 460–461 paper jams

1. Open the paper transport unit door.



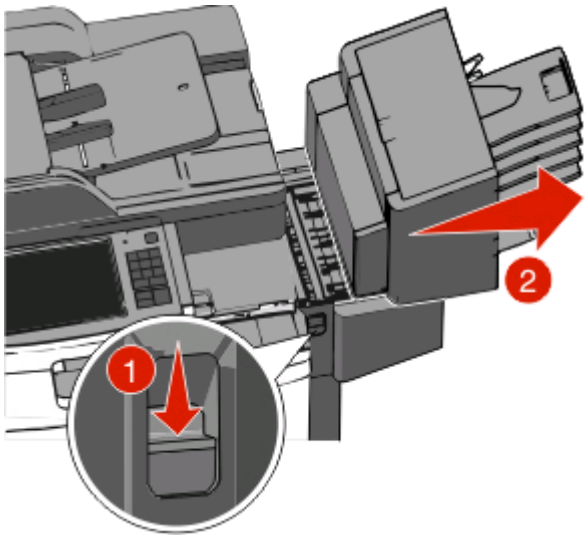
2. Firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

   Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

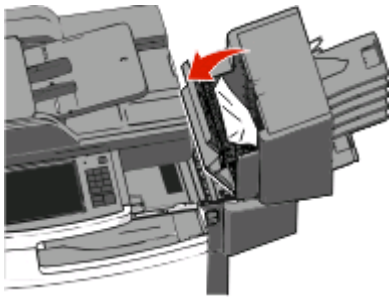
3. Close the paper transport unit door.
4. From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

431–438 paper jams

1 Push down the button to slide the output finisher to the right.



2 Open the finisher door, and then removed the jammed paper.



Note: Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

3 Close the finisher door.

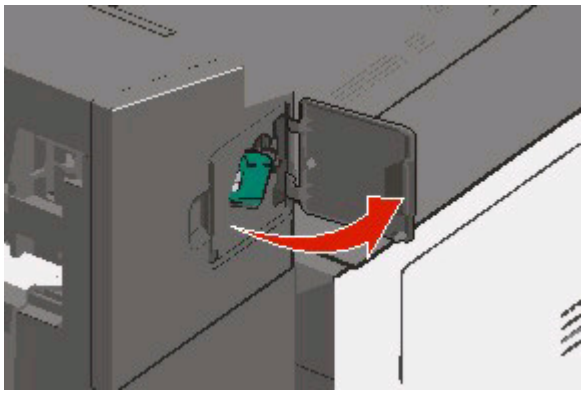
4 Slide the finisher back until it *clicks* in place.

5 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

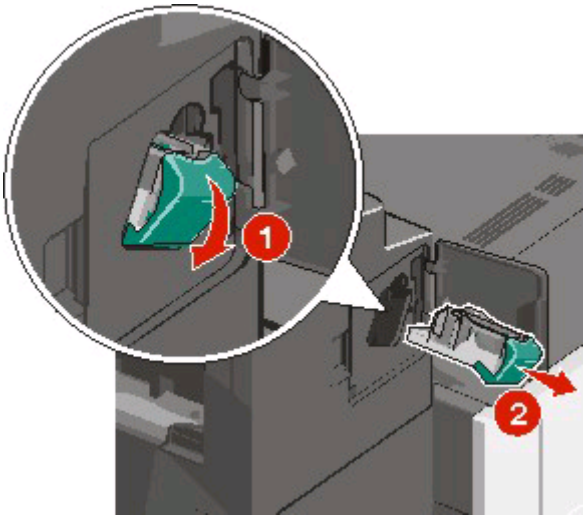
455 staple jam

1 Press the latch to open the stapler door.

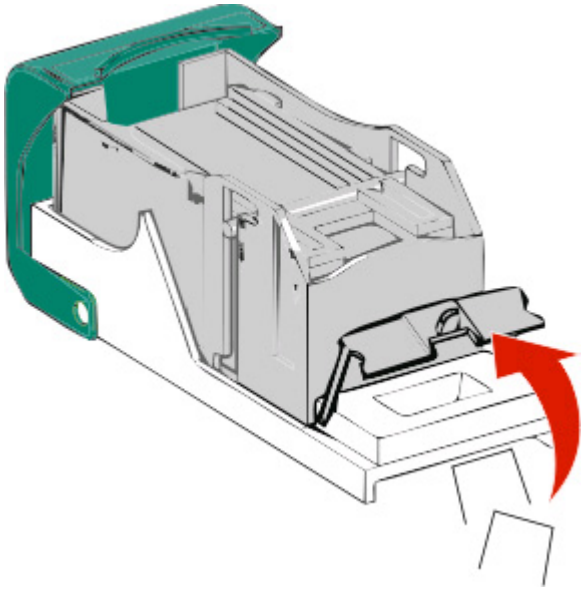
Note: The stapler door is located behind the finisher.



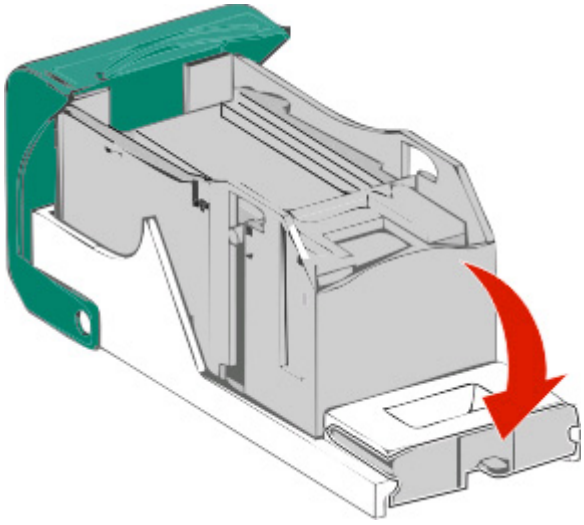
2 Lower the latch of the staple cartridge holder, and then pull the staple cartridge holder out of the printer.



3 Use the metal tab to lift the staple guard, and then remove any jammed or loose staples.

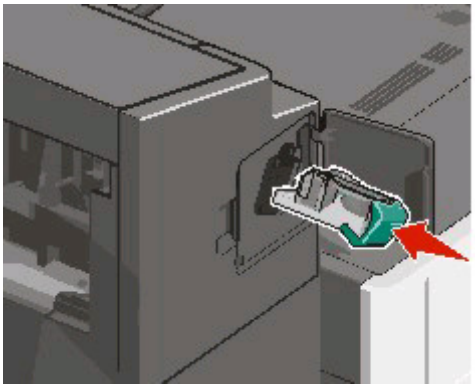


4 Close the staple guard.



5 Press down on the staple guard until it *clicks* into place.

6 Push the staple cartridge holder firmly back into the stapler unit until the staple cartridge holder *clicks* into place.



7 Close the stapler door.

8 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

Troubleshooting

The indicator light is blinking

The indicator light blinks red until you set up fax and e-mail. To disable the blinking light, follow these steps:

Note: Before completing these instructions for a printer on a network, make sure the fax cables are connected.

1. From the home screen, navigate to:

   Menus > **Settings** > **General Settings**
2. Touch the left or right arrow next to **Run initial setup**, and then touch **Yes** > **Submit**.
3. Turn the printer off, and then turn the printer back on.
4. From the printer control panel, touch your language.
5. Touch your country or region, and then touch **Continue**.
6. Select your time zone, and then touch **Continue**.
7. Touch **Fax** and **E-mail** to clear the icons, and then touch **Continue**.

Note: You can use these same steps to enable fax and e-mail.

Understanding printer messages

Adjusting color

Wait for the process to complete.

An error has occured with the Flash Drive. Please remove and re-insert the drive.

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove and reinsert the flash drive.
- If the error message remains, the flash memory may be defective and require replacing.

An error has occurred with the USB drive. Please remove and reinsert drive.

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove and reinsert the flash drive.
- If the error message remains, the flash memory may be defective and require replacement.

Change [src] to [custom type name]

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following:

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

Change [src] to [custom type name] load [orientation]

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

Change [src] to [custom string]

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following:

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

Change [src] to [custom string] load [orientation]

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following:

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

Change [src] to [size]

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following:

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

Change [src] to [size] load [orientation]

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following:

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

Change [src] to [size] [type]

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following:

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

Change [src] to [size] [type] load [orientation]

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following:

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

Check [src] orientation or guides

Try one or more of the following:

- Move the paper guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.
- Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:
  1. From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Size setting.
  2. Before sending the print job, specify the correct size setting:
     - For Windows users, specify the paper size from Print Properties.
     - For Macintosh users, specify the paper size from the Page Setup dialog.

Close paper transport cover

Close the paper transport unit cover or door.

Close left side door

Close the left side door of the printer.

Close [tray] door

Close the specified tray door.

Close finisher side door

Close the side door of the finisher.

Close finisher top cover

Close the top cover of the finisher.

Close front door

Close the front door of the printer.

Close top access cover

Close the specified door or cover.

Disk corrupted

The printer attempted a hard disk recovery on a corrupted hard disk, and the hard disk cannot be repaired. The hard disk must be reformatted.

Touch **Format disk** to reformat the printer hard disk and clear the message.

Note: Formatting deletes all the files stored on the printer hard disk.

Disk near full. Securely clearing disk space.

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored on the printer hard disk.
- Install a hard disk with higher capacity.

Disk problem

The printer hard disk must be reformatted.

Touch **Format disk** to reformat the printer hard disk and clear the message.

Note: Formatting deletes all the files stored on the printer hard disk.

Empty the hole punch box

1. Empty the hole punch box.

   For instructions on emptying the hole punch box, from the printer control panel touch **More Information**.

2. Reinsert the hole punch box into the finisher, and then touch **Continue** to clear the message.

Error reading USB drive. Remove drive.

An unsupported USB device has been inserted. Remove the USB device, and then install a supported one.

Fax partition inoperative. Contact system administrator.

The fax partition appears to be corrupted. Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- Turn the printer off and then back on to reset the printer. If the message appears again, then contact your system support person.

Some held jobs were not restored

Touch **Continue** to delete the specified job.

Note: Held jobs that are not restored stay on the hard disk and are inaccessible.

Fax server 'To Format' not set up. Contact system administrator.

The printer is in Fax Server mode, but the Fax Server setup has not been completed.

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- Complete the Fax Server setup. If the message appears again, contact your system support person.

Fax Station Name not set up

The Fax Station Name has not been entered. Sending and receiving faxes is disabled until fax is configured properly.

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- Complete the Analog Fax Setup. If the message appears again, contact your system support person.

Fax Station Number not set up

The Fax Station Number has not been entered. Sending and receiving faxes is disabled until fax is configured properly.

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- Complete the Analog Fax Setup. If the message appears again, contact your system support person.

Install bin [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Install the specified bin:
  1. Turn the printer off.
  2. Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  3. Install the specified bin.
  4. Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  5. Turn the printer back on.
- Cancel the print job.

Install Tray [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Install the specified tray:
  1. Turn the printer off.
  2. Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  3. Install the specified tray.
  4. Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  5. Turn the printer back on.
- Cancel the print job.

Insert the hole punch box

Insert the hole punch box into the finisher, and then touch **Continue** to clear the message.

Insert Tray [x]

Insert the specified tray into the printer.

Insert staple cartridge

Try one or more of the following:

- Insert a staple cartridge.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and print without using the staple finisher.

Load [src] with [custom type name]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch **Paper loaded, continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

  If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it prints from the default paper source.
- Cancel the print job.

Load [src] with [custom string]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch **Paper loaded, continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

  If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it prints from the default paper source.
- Cancel the print job.

Load [src] with [size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch **Paper loaded, continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

  If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it feeds from the default paper source.
- Cancel the print job.

Load [src] with [type] [size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch **Paper loaded, continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

  If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it feeds from the default paper source.

- Cancel the print job.

Load Manual Feeder with [custom type name]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the multipurpose feeder.
- Touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** to clear the message and continue printing.

  If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, then it prints from the default paper source.
- Cancel the print job.

Load Manual Feeder with [custom string]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the multipurpose feeder.
- Touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** to clear the message and continue printing.

  If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, then it feeds from that tray If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, then it prints from the default paper source.
- Cancel the print job.

Load Manual Feeder with [size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the multipurpose feeder.
- Touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** to clear the message and continue printing.

  If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, then it prints from the default paper source.
- Cancel the print job.

Load Manual Feeder with [type] [size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the multipurpose feeder.
- Touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** to clear the message and continue printing.

  If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, then it prints from the default paper source.
- Cancel the print job.

Load staples

Try one or more of the following:

- Replace the specified staple cartridge in the finisher.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

Memory full, cannot print faxes

There is not enough memory to print the fax job.

Touch **Continue** to clear the message without printing. Held faxes will attempt to print after the printer has been restarted.

Reattach bin [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Turn the printer off and then back on.
- Reattach the specified bin:
  1. Turn the printer off.
  2. Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  3. Remove the specified bin.
  4. Reattach the bin.
  5. Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  6. Turn the printer back on.
- Remove the specified bin:
  1. Turn the printer off.
  2. Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  3. Remove the specified bin.
  4. Contact Customer Support.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and print without using the specified bin.

Reattach bin [x] – [y]

Try one or more of the following:

- Turn the printer off and then back on.
- Reattach the specified bins:
  1. Turn the printer off.
  2. Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  3. Remove the specified bins.
  4. Reattach the bins.
  5. Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  6. Turn the printer back on.
- Remove the specified bins:
  1. Turn the printer off.
  2. Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  3. Remove the specified bins.
  4. Contact Customer Support.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and print without using the specified bins.

Remove packaging material, [area name]

Remove any remaining packaging material from the specified location.

Remove paper from standard output bin

Remove the stack of paper from the standard exit bin.

Remove paper from bin [x]

Remove the paper from the specified bin. The printer automatically senses paper removal and resumes printing.

If removing the paper does not clear the message, then touch **Continue**.

Remove paper from all bins

Output bins have reached their capacity. Remove paper from all output bins to clear the message and continue printing.

Remove paper from [linked bin set name]

Remove the paper from the specified bin. The printer automatically senses paper removal and resumes printing.

If removing the paper does not clear the message, then touch **Continue**.

Restore Held Jobs?

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to restore all held jobs stored on the printer hard disk.
- Touch **Do not restore** if you do not want any print jobs to be restored.

Scanner automatic feeder cover open

Close the ADF cover.

Slide finisher to the left

Slide the mailbox or finisher to the left until it *clicks* into place.

Supply needed to complete job

A supply needed to complete the job is missing. Touch **Cancel** to clear the message.

Unsupported disk

An unsupported disk has been inserted. Remove the unsupported disk, and then install a supported one.

Tray [x] paper size unsupported

The paper size in the specified tray is unsupported. Replace it with a supported paper size.

31.xx Missing or defective [color] cartridge

Try one or more of the following:

1. Remove and reinstall the specified print cartridge.

   For instructions on removing a print cartridge, touch **More Information**.

2. Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

   Note: If the message is not cleared, then replace the defective print cartridge.

32.xx [color] cartridge part number unsupported by device

1. Remove the unsupported print cartridge, and then install a supported one.

   For instructions on removing a print cartridge, touch **More Information**.

2. Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

34 Incorrect paper size, open [src]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the appropriate paper or specialty media in the proper tray.
- Confirm that the wheel on tray 1 is set to the paper size loaded in the tray. Make sure this size is the size you are trying to print.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and print using a different tray.
- Check length and width guides of the tray and make sure the paper is properly loaded in the tray.
- Make sure the Print Properties or Print dialog settings have the correct paper size and type.
- Check that the paper size is correctly set. For example, if the MP Feeder Size is set to Universal, make sure the paper is large enough for the data being printed.
- Cancel the print job.

35 Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to disable Resource Save and continue printing.
- To enable Resource Save after receiving this message, make sure the link buffers are set to Auto, and then exit the menus to activate the link buffer changes. When **Ready** appears, enable Resource Save.
- Install additional memory.

37 Insufficient memory to collate job

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to print the portion of the job already stored and begin collating the rest of the print job.
- Cancel the current print job.

37 Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to stop the defragment operation and continue printing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data in printer memory.
- Install additional printer memory.

37 Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted

The printer deleted some held jobs in order to process current jobs.

Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

38 Memory full

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- Cancel the current print job.
- Install additional printer memory.

39 Complex page, some data may not have printed

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current print job.
- Install additional printer memory.

40 [color] invalid refill, change cartridge

Replace the specified cartridge to continue printing.

51 Defective flash detected

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current print job.

52 Not enough free space in flash memory for resources

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

  Downloaded fonts and macros not previously stored in flash memory are deleted.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored in flash memory.
- Upgrade to a larger capacity flash memory card.

54 Network [x] software error

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to continue printing.
- Turn the printer off, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.
- Upgrade (flash) the network firmware in the printer.

54 Serial option [x] error

Try one or more of the following:

- Check that the serial cable is connected properly and is the correct one for the serial port.
- Check that the serial interface parameters (protocol, baud, parity, and data bits) are set correctly on the printer and on the host computer.
- Touch **Continue** to continue printing.
- Turn the printer power off and then back on to reset the printer.

54 Standard network software error

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to continue printing.
- Turn the printer off and then back on to reset the printer.
- Upgrade (flash) the network firmware in the printer or print server.

55 Unsupported option in slot [x]

1. Turn the printer off.
2. Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
3. Remove the unsupported option card from the printer system board, and then replace it with a supported card.
4. Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
5. Turn the printer back on.

56 Parallel port [x] disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

  The printer discards any data received through the parallel port.
- Make sure the Parallel Buffer menu item is not set to Disabled.

56 Serial port [x] disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

  The printer discards any data received through the serial port.
- Make sure the Serial Buffer menu is not set to Disabled.

56 Standard USB port disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

  The printer discards any data received through the USB port.
- Make sure the USB Buffer menu item is not set to Disabled.

56 Standard parallel port disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

  The printer discards any data received through the parallel port.
- Make sure the Parallel Buffer menu item is not set to Disabled.

56 USB port [x] disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

  The printer discards any data received through the USB port.
- Make sure the USB Buffer menu is not set to Disabled.

57 Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored

Something has changed in the printer to invalidate the held jobs. Possible changes include:

- The printer firmware has been updated.
- Paper input options needed for the print job were removed.
- The print job was created using data from a device in the USB port and the device is no longer in the USB port.
- The printer hard disk contains print jobs that were stored while installed in a different printer model.

Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

58 Too many bins attached

1. Turn the printer off.
2. Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
3. Remove the additional bins.
4. Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
5. Turn the printer back on.

58 Too many disks installed

1. Turn the printer off.
2. Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
3. Remove the excess disks.
4. Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
5. Turn the printer back on.

58 Too many flash options installed

1. Turn the printer off.
2. Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
3. Remove the excess flash memory.
4. Connect the power cord to a properly grounded outlet.
5. Turn the printer back on.

58 Too many trays attached

1. Turn the printer off.
2. Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
3. Remove the additional trays.
4. Connect the power cord to a properly grounded outlet.
5. Turn the printer back on.

58 Input config error

1. Turn the printer off.
2. Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
3. Check if all tray configurations are correct. Remove unnecessary trays if needed.

4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.

5 Turn the printer back on.

59 Incompatible output bin [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove the specified output bin.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing without using the specified output bin.

61 Remove defective disk

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Install a different printer hard disk before performing any operations that require a printer hard disk.

62 Disk full

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue processing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored on the printer hard disk.
- Install a printer hard disk with larger capacity.

80.xx Fuser near life warning

1 Order a replacement fuser immediately.

2 When print quality is reduced, install the new fuser, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

3 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

80.xx Fuser life warning

- Order a replacement fuser immediately. When print quality is reduced, install the new fuser, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

80.xx Replace fuser

Replace the fuser using the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

80.xx Fuser missing

1 Replace the fuser, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

82.xx Replace waste toner bottle

1. Replace the waste toner bottle.

   For instructions on replacing the waste toner bottle, from the printer control panel touch **More Information**.

2. Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

82.xx Waste toner bottle missing

Reinsert the waste toner bottle into the printer.

82.xx Waste toner bottle nearly full

Order a replacement waste toner bottle immediately.

1. Replace the waste toner bottle.

   For instructions on installing the waste toner bottle, from the printer control panel touch **More Information**.

2. Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

83.xx Replace transfer module

Replace the transfer module, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

83.xx Transfer module life warning

1. Replace the transfer module, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
2. Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

83.xx Transfer module missing

Insert the transfer module into the printer.

88.xx [color] cartridge nearly low

Order a replacement for the specified print cartridge.

88.xx [color] cartridge low

1. Remove the specified cartridge.

   Warning—Potential Damage: Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

2. Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.
3. Reinsert the cartridge, and then touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

Notes:

- Repeat this procedure multiple times until the print remains faded. When the print remains faded, replace the cartridge.
- Have a new cartridge available when the current one no longer prints satisfactorily.

88.xx [Color] cartridge very low

The specified print cartridge is very low.

1. For instructions on replacing a print cartridge, from the printer control panel touch **More Information**.
2. Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

88.xx [Color] cartridge critically low

The specified print cartridge is critically low.

1. For instructions on replacing a print cartridge, from the printer control panel touch **More Information**.
2. Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

840.01 Scanner disabled by admin

Print without the scanner or contact your system support person.

840.02 Scanner disabled. Contact system administrator if problem persists.

The printer identified a problem with the scanner and automatically disabled it. Try one or more of the following:

1. Remove all pages from the ADF.
2. Turn the printer off.
3. Wait for 15 seconds, and then turn the printer on.

   Note: If turning the printer off and then on again does not clear the message, then touch **Continue with scanner disabled** to return to the home screen, and then contact your system support person.
4. Place the document in the ADF, and then adjust the paper guides.
5. From the home screen, touch **Copy**, or use the keypad to enter the number of copies.
6. Change the copy settings as needed.
7. Touch **Copy It**.

1565 Emulation error, load emulation option

The printer automatically clears the message in 30 seconds and then disables the download emulator on the firmware card.

To fix this, download the correct download emulator version from the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com**.

Solving basic printer problems

If there are basic printer problems, or the printer is unresponsive, make sure:

- The power cord is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off by any switch or breaker.
- The printer is not plugged into any surge protectors, uninterrupted power supplies, or extension cords.
- Other electronic equipment plugged into the outlet is working.
- The printer is turned on. Check the printer power switch.
- The printer cable is securely attached to the printer and the host computer, print server, option, or other network device.
- All options are properly installed.
- The printer driver settings are correct.

Once you have checked each of these possibilities, turn the printer off, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on. This often fixes the problem.

Solving printing problems

Multiple-language PDF files do not print

The PDF files may contain unavailable fonts.

1. Open the document you want to print in Adobe Acrobat.
2. Click the printer icon > **Advanced** > **Print as image** > **OK** > **OK**.

Printer control panel display is blank or displays only diamonds

The printer self test failed. Turn the printer off, wait about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer on.

If **Ready** does not appear, then turn the printer off and contact Customer Support.

Error message about reading USB drive appears

Make sure the USB drive is supported. For information regarding tested and approved USB flash memory devices, see “Printing from a flash drive” on page 84.

Print jobs do not print

Try one or more of the following:

Make sure the printer is ready to print

Make sure **Ready** appears on the display before sending a print job.

Check if the standard exit bin is full

Remove the paper stack from the standard exit bin.

Check if the paper tray is empty

Load paper in the tray.

Make sure the correct printer software is installed

- Verify that you are using the correct printer software.
- If the printer is connected to your computer through a USB port, then make sure you are running a supported operating system and using a compatible printer software.

Make sure the internal print server is working properly

- Make sure the internal print server is properly installed and that the printer is connected to the network.
- Print a network setup page and check that the status shows **Connected**. If the status is **Not Connected**, then check the network cables, and then try printing the network setup page again. Contact your system support person to make sure the network is functioning correctly.

The printer software is available on the Lexmark Web site at **http://support.lexmark.com**.

Make sure you are using a recommended USB, serial, or Ethernet cable

For more information, visit the Lexmark Web site at **http://support.lexmark.com**.

Make sure printer cables are securely connected

Check the cable connections to the printer and print server to make sure they are secure.

For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer.

Confidential and other held jobs do not print

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Partial job, no job, or blank page prints

The print job may contain a formatting error or invalid data.

- Delete the print job, and then print it again.
- For PDF documents, recreate the PDF and then print it again.

If you are printing from the Internet, then the printer may be reading multiple job titles as duplicates and deleting all jobs except the first one.

- For Windows users, open Print Properties. From the Print and Hold dialog, select the "Keep duplicate documents" check box under the User name text box before entering a PIN number.
- For Macintosh users, save each print job, naming each job differently, and then send the individual jobs to the printer.

Make sure the printer has sufficient memory

Free up additional printer memory by scrolling through the list of held jobs and deleting some of them.

Print job takes longer than expected

Try one or more of the following:

Reduce the complexity of the print job

Eliminate the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the print job.

Turn off the Page Protect setting

From the home screen, navigate to:

> **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Print Recovery** > **Page Protect** > **Off** >

Change the environmental settings

When using Eco-Mode or Quiet Mode settings, you may notice a reduction in performance.

Job prints from the wrong tray or on the wrong paper

Check the paper type setting

Make sure the paper type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

1. From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type setting.
2. Before sending the job to print, specify the correct type setting:
   - For Windows users, specify the type from Print Properties.
   - For Macintosh users, specify the type from the Print dialog.

Incorrect characters print

- Make sure the printer is not in Hex Trace mode. If **`Ready Hex`** appears on the display, you must exit Hex Trace mode before you can print your job. Turn the printer off and back on to exit Hex Trace mode.
- Make sure the SmartSwitch settings are set to On in the Network and USB menus.

Tray linking does not work

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Load the same size and type of paper

- Load the same size and type of paper in each tray to be linked.
- Move the paper guides to the correct positions for the paper size loaded in each tray.

Use the same Paper Size and Paper Type settings

- Print a menu settings page and compare the settings for each tray.
- If necessary, adjust the settings from the Paper Size/Type menu.

Note: The standard 550-sheet tray and the multipurpose feeder do not automatically sense the paper size. You must set the size from the Paper Size/Type menu.

Large jobs do not collate

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Make sure Collate is set to On

From the Finishing menu or Print Properties, set Collate to On.

Note: Setting Collate to Off in the software overrides the setting in the Finishing menu.

Reduce the complexity of the print job

Reduce the complexity of the print job by eliminating the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the job.

Make sure the printer has enough memory

Add printer memory or an optional hard disk.

Unexpected page breaks

Increase the Print Timeout value

1. From the home screen, navigate to:

   > **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Timeouts** > **Print Timeout**

2. Increase the Print Timeout value, and then touch .

Solving copy problems

Copier does not respond

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Check the display for error messages

Clear any error messages.

Check the power

Make sure the printer is plugged in, the power is on, and **Ready** appears.

Scanner unit does not close

Make sure there are no obstructions:

1. Lift the scanner unit.
2. Remove any obstruction keeping the scanner unit open.
3. Lower the scanner unit.

Poor copy quality

These are some examples of poor copy quality:

- Blank pages
- Checkerboard pattern
- Distorted graphics or pictures
- Missing characters
- Faded print
- Dark print
- Skewed lines
- Smudges
- Streaks
- Unexpected characters
- White lines in print

Try one or more of the following:

Clear any error messages

Check the display and clear any error messages.

Replace the toner or print cartridge

When the print remains faded, replace the toner or print cartridge.

Clean the scanner glass

The scanner glass may be dirty. Clean the scanner glass with a clean, lint-free cloth dampened with water.

For more information, see “Cleaning the scanner glass” on page 223.

Adjust the toner darkness of the copy

Adjust the toner darkness from the Copy menus.

Make sure the quality of the original document is satisfactory

Check the quality of the original document.

Place the original document properly

Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

Make sure to use the appropriate Copy settings

When patterns (moiré) appear in the output:

- On the Copy screen make sure the Content Type and Source settings are appropriate for the document being scanned.
- From the Copy screen, navigate to:

  Advanced Options > **Advanced Imaging** > **Sharpness** > lower the Sharpness setting
- On the Copy screen, make sure no scaling is being selected.

When the text is light or disappearing:

- From the Copy screen, navigate to:

  Content > **Text** > ✔ > select the appropriate source for the original document being copied > ✔
- From the Copy screen, navigate to:

  Advanced Options > **Advanced Imaging** > **Sharpness** > increase the current setting
- From the Copy screen, navigate to:

  Advanced Options > **Advanced Imaging** > **Background removal**, and then reduce the current setting
- From the Copy screen, navigate to:

  Advanced Options > **Advanced Imaging** > **Contrast** > increase the current setting
- From the Copy screen, navigate to:

  Advanced Options > **Advanced Imaging** > **Shadow detail** > reduce the current setting

When the output appears washed out or overexposed:

- On the Copy screen make sure the Content Type and Source settings are appropriate for the document being scanned.
- From the Copy screen, adjust the Darkness setting.
- From the Copy screen, navigate to:

  Advanced Options > **Advanced Imaging** > **Shadow detail** > reduce the current setting
- From the Copy screen, navigate to:

  Advanced Options > **Advanced Imaging** > **Background removal** > reduce the current setting

Partial document or photo copies

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Check the document placement

Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

Check the paper size setting

Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

1. From the printer control panel, check the Paper Size setting from the Paper menu.
2. Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:
   - For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
   - For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

Solving scanner problems

Checking an unresponsive scanner

If your scanner is not responding, then make sure:

- The printer is turned on.
- The printer cable is securely attached to the printer and the host computer, print server, option, or other network device.
- The power cord is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off by any switch or breaker.
- The printer is not plugged into any surge protectors, uninterrupted power supplies, or extension cords.
- Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet is working.

Once you have checked each of these possibilities, turn the printer off and then back on. This often fixes the problem with the scanner.

Scan was not successful

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Check the cable connections

Make sure the network or USB cable is securely connected to the computer and the printer.

An error may have occurred in the program

Turn off and then restart the computer.

Scanning takes too long or freezes the computer

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Other software programs may be interfering with scanning

Close all programs not being used.

The scan resolution may be set too high

Select a lower scan resolution.

Poor scanned image quality

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Check the display for error messages

Clear any error messages.

The scanner glass may be dirty

Clean the scanner glass with a clean, lint-free cloth dampened with water. For more information, see "Cleaning the scanner glass" on page 223.

Adjust the scan resolution

Increase the resolution of the scan for a higher quality output.

Check the quality of the original document

Make sure the quality of the original document is satisfactory.

Check the document placement

Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

Partial document or photo scans

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Check the document placement

Make sure the document or photo is loaded facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

Check the paper size setting

Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

1. From the printer control panel, check the Paper Size setting from the Paper menu.
2. Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:
   - For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
   - For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

Cannot scan from a computer

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Check the display for error messages

Clear any error messages.

Check the power

Make sure the printer is plugged in, the power is on, and **Ready** appears.

Check the cable connections

Make sure the network or USB cable is securely connected to the computer and the printer.

Solving fax problems

Caller ID is not shown

Contact your telecommunications company to verify that your telephone line is subscribed to the caller ID service.

If your region supports multiple caller ID patterns, you may have to change the default setting. There are two settings available: FSK (pattern 1) and DTMF (pattern 2). The availability of these settings by way of the Fax menu depends on whether your country or region supports multiple caller ID patterns. Contact your telecommunications company to determine which pattern or switch setting to use.

Cannot send or receive a fax

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Check the display for error messages

Clear any error messages.

Check the power

Make sure the printer is plugged in, the power is on, and **Ready** appears.

Check the printer connections

Make sure the cable connections for the following hardware are secure, if applicable:

- Telephone
- Handset
- Answering machine

Check the telephone wall jack

1. Plug a telephone into the wall jack.
2. Listen for a dial tone.
3. If you do not hear a dial tone, then plug a different telephone into the wall jack.
4. If you still do not hear a dial tone, then plug a telephone into a different wall jack.
5. If you hear a dial tone, then connect the printer to that wall jack.

Review this digital phone service checklist

The fax modem is an analog device. Certain devices can be connected to the printer so that digital telephone services can be used.

- If you are using an ISDN telephone service, then connect the printer to an analog telephone port (an R-interface port) on an ISDN terminal adapter. For more information and to request an R-interface port, contact your ISDN provider.
- If you are using DSL, then connect to a DSL filter or router that will support analog use. For more information, contact your DSL provider.
- If you are using a PBX telephone service, then make sure you are connecting to an analog connection on the PBX. If none exists, consider installing an analog telephone line for the fax machine.

Check for a dial tone

- Place a test call to the telephone number to which you want to send a fax to make sure that it is working correctly.
- If the telephone line is being used by another device, then wait until the other device is finished before sending a fax.
- If you are using the On Hook Dial feature, then turn up the volume to verify a dial tone.

Temporarily disconnect other equipment

To ensure the printer is working correctly, connect it directly to the telephone line. Disconnect any answering machines, computers with modems, or telephone line splitters.

Check for jams

Clear any jams, and then make sure that **Ready** appears.

Temporarily disable Call Waiting

Call Waiting can disrupt fax transmissions. Disable this feature before sending or receiving a fax. Call your telephone company to obtain the keypad sequence for temporarily disabling Call Waiting.

Voice Mail service may be interfering with the fax transmission

Voice Mail offered through your local telephone company may disrupt fax transmissions. To enable both Voice Mail and the printer to answer calls, you may want to consider adding a second telephone line for the printer.

The printer memory may be full

1. Dial the fax number.
2. Scan the original document one page at a time.

Can send but not receive faxes

Try one or more of the following:

Load paper

If the tray is empty, then load paper in the tray or feeder.

Check the ring count delay settings

The ring count delay sets the number of times the phone rings before the printer answers. If you have extension phones on the same line as the printer, or subscribe to the telephone company's Distinctive Ring service, then keep the Ring Delay setting at 4.

1. Type the printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
2. Click **Settings** > **Fax Settings** > **Analog Fax Setup**.
3. In the Rings to Answer field, enter the number of times you want the phone to ring before the printer answers.
4. Click **Submit**.

Replace the toner or print cartridge

Replace the toner or print cartridge.

Can receive but not send faxes

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

The printer is not in Fax mode

On the home screen, touch **Fax** to put the printer in Fax mode.

The document is not loaded properly

Load the original document faceup, short edge first into the ADF or facedown on the scanner glass in the upper left corner.

Note: Do not load postcards, photos, small items, transparencies, photo paper, or thin media (such as magazine clippings) into the ADF. Place these items on the scanner glass.

Make sure the shortcut number is set up properly

- Check to make sure the shortcut number has been programmed for the number that you want to dial.
- As an alternative, dial the telephone number manually.

Received fax has poor print quality

Try one or more of the following:

Resend the document

Ask the person who sent you the fax to:

- Check that the quality of the original document is satisfactory.
- Resend the fax. There may have been a problem with the quality of the telephone line connection.
- Increase the fax scan resolution, if possible.

Replace the cartridge

When **88 Cartridge low** appears or when the prints appear faded, replace the cartridge.

Make sure the fax transmission speed is not set too high

Decrease the incoming fax transmission speed:

1. Type the printer IP address in the address field of your Web browser.

   Note: If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2. Click **Settings** > **Fax Settings** > **Analog Fax Setup**.
3. In the Max Speed box, click one of the following:

   2400
   4800
   9600
   14400
   33600

4. Click **Submit**.

Solving home screen applications problems

Forms are not available or are not working

Make sure the bookmark pointing to the form is in the Bookmarks root folder

If the bookmark pointing to the form was created in a subfolder of the Bookmarks folder, then it will not be available under the Forms solution. Delete the bookmark, and recreate it under the Bookmarks root folder.

Make sure the bookmark is pointing to the correct location

The printer does not validate bookmarks. If the URL or network location that was specified when the bookmark was created is incorrect, then the printer will not be able to access the document.

The application icon is missing from the home screen

For the application to work, at least one valid destination must be enabled. If no valid destinations are available, then the application icon will disappear from the home screen.

To display the application icon when no destinations are available:

1. From the application configuration settings, under Home Screen Button, select **Always show button** under Display Option.
2. Click **Apply**.

An application error has occurred

Check the system log for relevant details

1. Type the printer IP address or hostname in the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:
   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
2. Click **Settings** > **Solutions** > **Embedded Solutions** > **System** tab > **Log**.

Make sure the filename you want to scan to is not already in use

Verify that the file to which you want to scan is not open by another application or user.

To help prevent errors, make sure either **Append time stamp** or **Overwrite existing file** is selected in the destination configuration settings.

Adjust the scan settings

In the destination configuration settings, lower the scan settings. For example, lower the scan resolution, disable **Color**, or change the Content type to **Text**.

Contact customer support

If you still cannot isolate the problem, then contact customer support for additional help.

A network destination stopped working or is invalid

Make sure the printer authentication is configured

If the application is configured to use MFP authentication credentials, then the printer authentication settings must be configured from the Embedded Web Server. For more information on configuring the printer authentication settings, see the *Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide* available on **www.lexmark.com**.

Make sure destination has a valid network address

If the destination has been moved, then the network address may have changed. The destination network address can be accessed from the Embedded Web Server. For information on accessing or editing a destination, see Editing a destination.

Make sure the printer is connected to the network

Make sure that all appropriate network cables are securely connected and that the network settings of the printer are correctly configured. For information on networking the printer, see the printer *User's Guide* or the *Software and Documentation* CD that came with the printer.

Check the system log for relevant details

1. Type the printer IP address or hostname in the address field of your Web browser.

   If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

   - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
   - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2. Click **Settings** > **Solutions** > **Embedded Solutions** > **System** tab > **Log**.

Printer cannot scan to the selected destination

Make sure the destination is valid

Verify that the destination is valid in the application configuration settings.

If the destination has been moved, the network address may have changed. The destination network address can be accessed from the Embedded Web Server. For information on accessing or editing a destination, see Editing a destination.

If the printer and destination reside in different domains, then make sure the domain information is specified

If the destination exists within a different Windows domain than the printer, you can edit the destination from the application's configuration page and enter the appropriate Windows domain information in the domain field as part of the Network Folder Address.

Add the domain name to the Domain Search Order list under the printer network setup. For information on adding or editing domain names, see Specifying the Domain Search Order.

Make sure the firewall software is allowing communication

If the destination resides on a computer that uses a newer version of the Windows operating system (Windows XP or later), and the Windows Firewall is enabled, the printer may have difficulty sending information to the destination if the destination and the printer reside on different subnets. The Windows Firewall must either be configured to allow communication with the subnet the printer resides on, or the destination should be set up on the same subnet as the printer.

Make sure a file with the default file name does not already exist in the destination

If the three configuration settings for the File Name section of the solution's configuration page are not selected (allow user to enter file name; append time stamp; overwrite existing file), and a file using the default file name already exists within the destination, there will be no method in place to distinguish the newly scanned file from the file present in the destination. The printer will not be able to overwrite the old file, the new file will not receive a time stamp to differentiate it from the old file, and the user will not be able to give the new file a different name. In this case, the old file must either be removed from the destination, or one of the previously mentioned settings must be turned on.

Make sure the network is functioning and the printer can communicate

Verify all network connections and that the network settings of the printer are configured appropriately. For information on networking the printer, see the *User's Guide* and additional documentation on the *Software and Documentation CD* that shipped with the printer.

For networks using LDAP authentication, make sure LDAP settings have been configured correctly

Verify that LDAP settings are configured appropriately in your printer setup, and in the setup dialog. For more information on LDAP settings, see Adding a destination, and Configuring LDAP.

Make sure you have permission to save scans to this destination

On the application Edit Destination screen, clear the contents of the Path Suffix field; or on the destination server, change the user's home folder to match the contents of the Path Suffix field.

Solving option problems

Option does not operate correctly or quits after it is installed

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Reset the printer

Turn the printer off, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer on.

Check to see if the option is connected to the printer

1. Turn the printer off.
2. Unplug the printer from the wall outlet.
3. Check the connection between the option and the printer.

Make sure the option is installed

Print a menu settings page and check to see if the option is listed in the Installed Options list. If the option is not listed, then reinstall it.

Make sure the option is available in the printer driver

It may be necessary to manually add the option in the printer driver to make it available for print jobs. For more information, see "Updating available options in the printer driver" on page 41.

Make sure the option is selected

From the program you are using, select the option. Mac OS 9 users should make sure the printer is set up in the Chooser.

Paper tray problems

Try one or more of the following:

Make sure the paper is loaded correctly

1. Open the paper tray.
2. Check for paper jams or misfeeds.
3. Make sure the paper guides are aligned against the edges of the paper.
4. Make sure the paper tray closes properly.

Reset the printer

Turn the printer off, wait about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer on.

Make sure the paper tray is installed correctly

If the paper tray is listed on the menu settings page, but paper jams when it enters or exits the tray, then it may not be properly installed. Reinstall the paper tray. For more information, see the hardware setup documentation that came with the paper tray, or go to **http://support.lexmark.com** to view the paper tray instruction sheet.

2,000-sheet drawer problems

Check the drawer connection

Make sure the 2,000-sheet drawer is properly connected to the printer.

Load paper

If the tray is empty, then load paper in the tray or feeder

Clear any jams

Open the side door of the tray or feeder, and then remove any jammed paper.

Avoid paper jams

- Flex the paper.
- Make sure the drawer is properly installed.
- Make sure paper is loaded correctly.
- Make sure the paper stack you load does not exceed the maximum stack height indicated in the tray.
- Make sure the paper or specialty media meets specifications and is not damaged.
- Make sure the guides are positioned correctly for the paper size loaded.

Cannot detect flash memory card

Make sure the flash memory card is securely connected to the printer system board.

Cannot detect printer hard disk

Make sure the printer hard disk is securely connected to the printer system board.

Internal Solutions Port does not operate correctly

Try one or more of the following:

Check the Internal Solutions Port (ISP) connections

Make sure the ISP is securely connected to the printer system board.

Check the cable

Make sure you are using the correct cable and that it is securely connected to the Internal Solutions (ISP) port.

Make sure the network software is configured correctly

For information on installing the network printing software, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD.

Internal print server does not operate correctly

Try one or more of the following:

Check the print server connections

- Make sure the internal print server is attached securely to the printer system board.
- Make sure you are using the correct cable and that it is securely connected.

Make sure the network software is configured correctly

For more information on installing the network printing software, do the following:

1. Open the *Software and Documentation* CD.
2. Click **Additional**.
3. Under Publications on this CD, select **Networking Guide**.

Memory card

Make sure the memory card is securely connected to the printer system board.

USB/parallel interface card does not operate correctly

Check the USB/parallel interface card connection

Make sure the USB/parallel interface card is securely connected to the printer system board.

Check the cable

Make sure you are using the correct cable and that it is securely connected.

Solving paper feed problems

Paper frequently jams

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Check the paper

Use recommended paper and specialty media. For more information, see the chapter about paper and specialty media guidelines.

Make sure there is not too much paper in the paper tray

Make sure the stack of paper you load does not exceed the maximum stack height indicated in the tray or on the multipurpose feeder.

Check the paper guides

Move the guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

The paper may have absorbed moisture due to high humidity

- Load paper from a fresh package.
- Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

Paper jam message remains after jam is cleared

Check the paper path

The paper path is not clear. Clear jammed paper from the entire paper path, and then touch **Continue**.

Jammed pages are not reprinted

Turn on Jam Recovery

1. From the home screen, navigate to:

   > **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Print Recovery**
2. Touch the arrows next to **Jam Recovery** until **On** or **Auto** appears.
3. Touch **Submit**.

Solving print quality problems

The information in the following topics may help you solve print quality problems. If these suggestions do not correct the problem, contact Customer Support. You may have a printer part that requires adjustment or replacement.

Isolating print quality problems

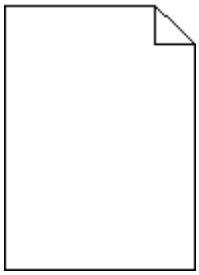
Print the print quality test pages to help isolate print quality problems.

1. Turn the printer off.
2. Load letter- or A4-size paper in the tray or feeder.
3. Hold down 2 and 6 while turning the printer on.
4. Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears.

   The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.
5. Touch **Print Quality Pages** > **Print Quality Pages**.

   The print quality test pages print.
6. Touch **Back** > **Exit Config Menu**.

Printer is printing blank pages



Try one or more of the following:

Make sure there is no packing material left on the toner or print cartridge

Remove the cartridge and make sure the packing material is properly removed. Reinstall the cartridge.

Make sure the toner or print cartridge is not low on toner

When **88.xx [color] cartridge low** appears, make sure that toner is distributed evenly among all four cartridges:

1. Remove the cartridge.

   Warning—Potential Damage: Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

2. Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.

3. Reinsert the cartridge.

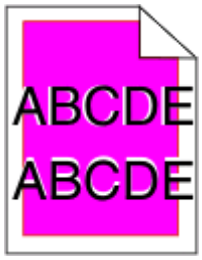
   Note: If print quality does not improve, then replace the cartridge of the color that is not printing.

If the problem continues, then the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact customer support.

Characters have jagged or uneven edges

If you are using downloaded fonts, verify that the fonts are supported by the printer, the host computer, and the software program.

Colors are not aligned properly



Color has shifted outside of the appropriate area or has been superimposed over another color area. Try one or more of the following:

Perform Color Adjust

From the printer control panel Quality menu, perform Color Adjust.

Reinstall the print cartridges

Remove and reinstall all four print cartridges.

Adjust the color alignment

1. Turn the printer off.
2. Load letter- or A4-size paper in the tray.
3. Hold down 2 and 6 while turning the printer on.
4. Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears.
   The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.
5. Touch **Color Alignment** > **Print Alignment Page**.
   The color alignment pages print.
6. Touch **Color Alignment**.
7. On the printed alignment pages, find the straightest of the 20 lines beside the letter A.
8. From the printer control panel, touch the arrows to select that number.
9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 to align sets B through L.
10. Touch **Back** > **Exit Config Menu**.

Note: If necessary, adjust the color alignment again.

Clipped images

Try one or more of the following:

Check the guides

Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

Check the paper size setting

Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

1. From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Size setting.
2. Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:
   - For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
   - For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

Fine horizontal lines appear on color pages

You may notice fine, horizontal lines in photographs or pages with a high concentration of color. This can occur when the printer is in Quiet Mode. To fix this, set Quiet Mode to **Off (Image/Photo)**.

Shadow images appear on prints

Try one or more of the following:

Check the paper type and weight settings

Make sure the paper type and weight settings match the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

1. From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings.
2. Before sending the print job, specify the correct paper type setting:
   - For Windows users, specify the paper type from Print Properties.
   - For Macintosh users, specify the paper type from the Print dialog.

Make sure the print cartridge is not low on toner

When **`88.xx [color] cartridge low`** appears, make sure that toner is distributed evenly among all four print cartridges or whichever color has the shadow images.

1. Remove the print cartridge.

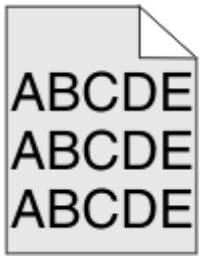
   Warning—Potential Damage: Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

2. Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.
3. Reinsert the print cartridge.

   Note: If print quality does not improve, replace the print cartridge of the color that is giving a shadow.

If the problem continues, the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact customer support.

Gray background on prints



Check the background darkness or removal setting

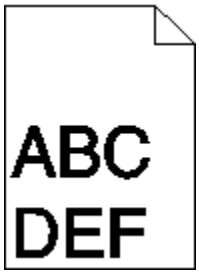
Try one or more of the following:

- Adjust the darkness to a lighter setting.
- Increase the background removal setting.

Make sure there is no worn or defective print cartridge

Replace the worn or defective print cartridge.

Incorrect margins



These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Check the paper guides

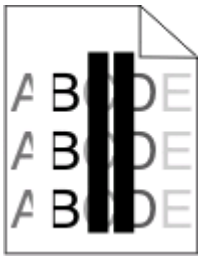
Move the guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

Check the paper size setting

Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

1. From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Size setting.
2. Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:
   - For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
   - For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

Light colored line, white line, or incorrectly colored line appears on prints



Try one or more of the following:

Make sure there is no defective print cartridge

Replace the defective print cartridge.

Make sure the transfer belt is not defective

Replace the defective transfer belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

Paper curl

Try one or more of the following:

Check the paper type and weight settings

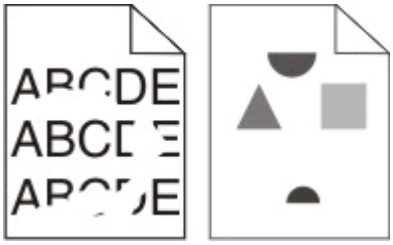
Make sure the paper type and weight settings match the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

1. From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings.
2. Before sending the print job, specify the correct paper type setting:
   - For Windows users, specify the paper type from Print Properties.
   - For Macintosh users, specify the paper type from the Print dialog.

Load paper from a fresh package

Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

Print irregularities



Try one or more of the following:

Load paper from a fresh package

The paper may have absorbed moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

Check the paper type and weight settings

Make sure the paper type and weight settings match the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

1. From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings.
2. Before sending the print job, specify the correct paper type setting:
   - For Windows users, specify the paper type from Print Properties.
   - For Macintosh users, specify the paper type from the Print dialog.

Avoid textured paper with rough finishes

Make sure there is no defective print cartridge

Replace the worn or defective print cartridge.

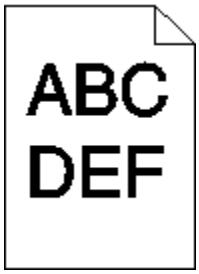
Make sure the transfer belt is not defective

Replace the defective transfer belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

Make sure the fuser is not defective

Replace the defective fuser. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

Print is too dark



Try one or more of the following:

Load paper from a fresh package

The paper may have absorbed moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

Avoid textured paper with rough finishes

Check the Paper Type setting

Make sure the Paper Type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type setting.
- For Windows users, check this setting from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, check this setting from the Print dialog.

Make sure there is no defective print cartridge

Replace the defective print cartridge.

Print is too light

Try one or more of the following:

Load paper from a fresh package

The paper may have absorbed moisture from high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

Avoid textured paper with rough finishes

Check the Paper Type setting

Make sure the Paper Type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type setting.
- For Windows users, check this setting from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, check this setting from the Print dialog.

Make sure the print cartridge is not low on toner

When **`88.xx [color] cartridge low`** appears, make sure the toner is distributed evenly within the print cartridge.

1. Remove the print cartridge.

   Warning—Potential Damage: Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

2. Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.

3 Reinsert the print cartridge.

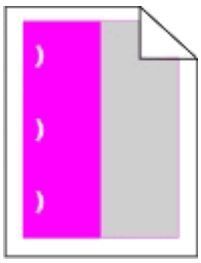
Note: If print quality does not improve, then replace the print cartridge.

If the problem continues, then the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact customer support.

Make sure there is no defective print cartridge

Replace the defective print cartridge.

Repeating defects appear on prints



Try one or more of the following:

Replace the print cartridge

Replace the print cartridge of the color with the repeating defect, if the print defects occur in the following instances:

- in every 37.7 mm (1.48 in.) of the page
- in every 41.6 mm (1.64 in.) of the page
- in every 42.7 mm (1.68 in.) of the page
- in every 94.3 mm (3.71 in.) of the page

Replace the fuser

Replace the fuser if print defects occur in the following instances:

- in every 95.0 mm (3.74 in.) of the page
- in every 146.7 mm (5.78 in.) of the page

Skewed print

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Check the paper guides

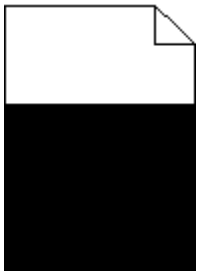
Move the length and width guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

- Make sure the guides are not too far from the paper stack.
- Make sure the guides are not pressing too lightly against the paper stack.

Check the paper

Make sure you are using paper that meets the printer specifications.

Solid color or black pages appear on prints



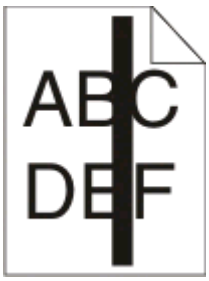
Make sure the print cartridges are installed correctly, are not defective and not low on toner

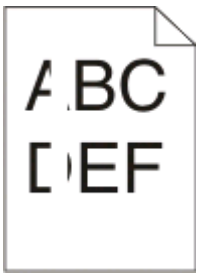
- Remove the print cartridges.

  Warning—Potential Damage: Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.
- Reinsert the print cartridges.

  Note: If the quality does not improve, replace the print cartridges.
- If the problem continues, the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact customer support.

Black or white streaks appear on transparencies or paper





Try one or more of the following:

Ensure that the fill pattern is correct

If the fill pattern is incorrect, choose a different fill pattern from your software program.

Check the paper type

- Use only the recommended transparencies.
- Ensure that the Paper Type setting matches what is loaded in the tray or feeder.
- Ensure that the Paper Texture setting is correct for the type of paper or specialty media loaded in the tray or feeder.

Make sure the print cartridge is not low on toner

When **88.xx [color] cartridge low** appears, make sure the toner is distributed evenly within the print cartridge:

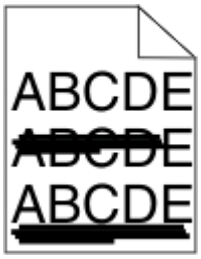
1. Remove the print cartridge.

   Warning—Potential Damage: Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

2. Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.
3. Reinsert the print cartridge.

If the problem continues, the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact Customer Support.

Streaked horizontal lines appear on prints



Try one or more of the following:

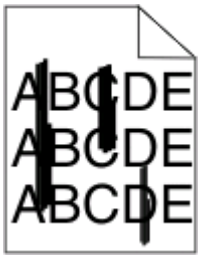
Select another tray or feeder

- From the printer control panel Paper Menu, select Default Source.
- For Windows users, select the paper source from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, select the paper source from the Print dialog and pop-up menus.

Make sure there is no worn, defective, or empty print cartridge

Replace the worn, defective, or empty print cartridge.

Streaked vertical lines



These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

The toner is smeared

Select another tray or feeder to feed paper for the job:

- From the printer control panel, select the Default Source from the Paper Menu.
- For Windows users, select the paper source from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, select the paper source from the Print dialog and pop-up menus.

A toner cartridge is defective

Replace the defective toner cartridge.

The transfer module is worn or defective

Replace the transfer module.

Toner fog or background shading appears on a page

Try one or more of the following:

Make sure print cartridges are installed correctly and are not defective

Reinstall or replace the print cartridge.

Make sure the transfer belt is not worn or defective

Replace the transfer belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

Make sure the fuser is not worn or defective

Replace the fuser. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

Make sure there is no toner in the paper path

Clean any visible toner from the paper path. If the problem persists, then contact customer support.

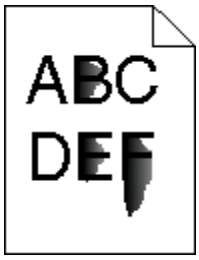
Recalibrate the printer

Perform color adjust from the printer control panel Quality menu.

Check the software program or application

The software program or application may have specified an off-white background.

Toner rubs off



These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

Check the Paper Type setting

Make sure the paper type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray.

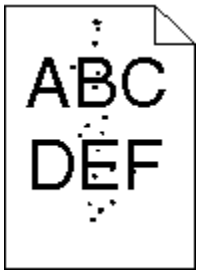
Check the Paper Weight and Paper Texture settings

Change the Paper Weight from Normal to Heavy. If necessary, change the Paper Texture from Normal to Rough in the printer control panel Paper menu.

The fuser is worn or defective

Replace the fuser.

Toner specks



These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

The toner cartridges are worn or defective

Replace the defective or worn cartridges.

There is toner in the paper path

Contact Customer Support.

Transparency print quality is poor

Try one or more of the following:

Check the transparencies

Use only transparencies that meet the printer specifications.

Check the paper type setting

Make sure the paper type setting is set to Transparency:

1. From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type setting.
2. Before sending the job to print, specify the correct type setting:
   - For Windows users, specify the type from Print Properties.
   - For Macintosh users, specify the type from the Print dialog.

Uneven print density

Make sure there is no defective or worn print cartridge

Replace the worn or defective print cartridge.

Solving color quality problems

This section helps answer some basic color-related questions and describes how some of the features provided in the Quality Menu can be used to solve typical color problems.

FAQ about color printing

What is RGB color?

Red, green, and blue light can be added together in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. For example, red and green can be combined to create yellow. Televisions and computer monitors create colors in this manner. RGB color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of red, green, or blue needed to produce a certain color.

What is CMYK color?

Cyan, magenta, yellow, and black inks or toners can be printed in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. For example, cyan and yellow can be combined to create green. Printing presses, inkjet printers, and color laser printers create colors in this manner. CMYK color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black needed to reproduce a particular color.

How is color specified in a document to be printed?

Software programs typically specify document color using RGB or CMYK color combinations. Additionally, they allow users to modify the color of each object in a document. For more information, see the software program Help topics.

How does the printer know what color to print?

When a user prints a document, information describing the type and color of each object is sent to the printer. The color information is passed through color conversion tables that translate the color into the appropriate amounts of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black toner needed to produce the desired color. The object information determines the application of color conversion tables. For example, it is possible to apply one type of color conversion table to text while applying a different color conversion table to photographic images.

Should I use PostScript or PCL emulation printer software? What settings should I use for the best color?

The PostScript driver is strongly recommended for best color quality. The default settings in the PostScript driver provide the preferred color quality for the majority of printouts.

Why doesn't the printed color match the color I see on the computer screen?

The color conversion tables used in Auto Color Correction mode generally approximate the colors of a standard computer monitor. However, because of technology differences that exist between printers and monitors, there are many colors that can also be affected by monitor variations and lighting conditions. For recommendations on how the printer color sample pages may be useful in solving certain color-matching problems, see the question, "How can I match a particular color (such as a corporate logo)?"

The printed page appears tinted. Can I adjust the color?

Sometimes a printed page may appear tinted (for example, everything printed seems to be too red). This can be caused by environmental conditions, paper type, lighting conditions, or user preference. In these instances, adjust the Color Balance setting to create a more preferable color. Color Balance provides the user with the ability to make subtle adjustments to the amount of toner being used in each color plane. Selecting positive or negative values for cyan, magenta, yellow, and black (from the Color Balance menu) will slightly increase or decrease the amount of toner used for the chosen color. For example, if a printed page has a red tint, then decreasing both magenta and yellow could potentially improve the color balance.

My color transparencies seem dark when they are projected. Is there anything I can do to improve the color?

This problem most commonly occurs when projecting transparencies with reflective overhead projectors. To obtain the highest projected color quality, transmissive overhead projectors are recommended. If a reflective projector must be used, then adjusting the Toner Darkness setting to 1, 2, or 3 will lighten the transparency. Make sure to print on the recommended type of color transparencies.

What is manual color correction?

When manual color correction is enabled, the printer employs user-selected color conversion tables to process objects. However, Color Correction must be set to Manual, or no user-defined color conversion will be implemented. Manual color correction settings are specific to the type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images), and how the color of the object is specified in the software program (RGB or CMYK combinations).

Notes:

- Manual color correction is not useful if the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations. It is also not effective in situations in which the software program or the computer operating system controls the adjustment of colors.
- The color conversion tables—applied to each object when Color Correction is set to Auto—generate preferred colors for the majority of documents.

To manually apply a different color conversion table:

1. From the Quality menu, select **Color Correction**, and then select **Manual**.
2. From the Quality menu, select **Manual Color**, and then select the appropriate color conversion table for the affected object type.

Manual Color menu

Object type	Color conversion tables
RGB Image RGB Text RGB Graphics	• **Vivid**—Produces brighter, more saturated colors and may be applied to all incoming color formats. • **sRGB Display**—Produces an output that approximates the colors displayed on a computer monitor. Black toner usage is optimized for printing photographs. • **Display—True Black**—Produces an output that approximates the colors displayed on a computer monitor. Uses only black toner to create all levels of neutral gray. • **sRGB Vivid**—Provides an increased color saturation for the sRGB Display color correction. Black usage is optimized for printing business graphics. • **Off**—No color correction is implemented.
CMYK Image CMYK Text CMYK Graphics	• **US CMYK**—Applies color correction to approximate the SWOP (Specifications for Web Offset Publishing) color output. • **Euro CMYK**—Applies color correction to approximated EuroScale color output. • **Vivid CMYK**—Increases the color saturation of the US CMYK color correction setting. • **Off**—No color correction is implemented.

How can I match a particular color (such as a corporate logo)?

From the printer Quality menu, nine types of Color Samples sets are available. These are also available from the Color Samples page of the Embedded Web Server. Selecting any sample set generates a multiple-page printout consisting of hundreds of colored boxes. Either a CMYK or RGB combination is located on each box, depending on the table selected. The observed color of each box is obtained by passing the CMYK or RGB combination labeled on the box through the selected color conversion table.

By examining Color Samples sets, a user can identify the box whose color is the closest to the desired color. The color combination labeled on the box can then be used for modifying the color of the object in a software program. For more information, see the software program Help topics. Manual color correction may be necessary to utilize the selected color conversion table for the particular object.

Selecting which Color Samples set to use for a particular color-matching problem depends on the Color Correction setting being used (Auto, Off, or Manual), the type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images), and how the color of the object is specified in the software program (RGB or CMYK combinations). When the printer Color Correction setting is set to Off, the color is based on the print job information; and no color conversion is implemented.

Note: The Color Samples pages are not useful if the software program does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations. Additionally, certain situations exist in which the software program or the computer operating system adjusts the RGB or CMYK combinations specified in the program through color management. The resulting printed color may not be an exact match of the Color Samples pages.

What are detailed Color Samples and how do I access them?

Detailed Color Samples sets are available only through the Embedded Web Server of a network printer. A detailed Color Samples set contains a range of shades (displayed as colored boxes) that are similar to a user-defined RGB or CMYK value. The likeness of the colors in the set are dependent on the value entered in the RGB or CMYK Increment box.

To access a detailed Color Samples set from the Embedded Web Server:

1. Open a Web browser.
2. In the address bar, type the network printer IP address.
3. Click **Configuration**.
4. Click **Color Samples**.
5. Click **Detailed Options** to narrow the set to one color range.
6. When the Detailed Options page appears, select a color conversion table.
7. Enter the RGB or CMYK color number.
8. Enter an Increment value from 1–255.

   Note: The closer the value is to 1, the narrower the color sample range will appear.
9. Click **Print** to print the detailed Color Samples set.

Embedded Web Server does not open

Try one or more of the following:

Check the network connection

Make sure the printer and computer are turned on and connected to the same network.

Check address entered into the Web browser

- Depending on the network settings, you may need to type `https://` instead of `http://` before the printer IP address to access the Embedded Web Server. For more information, contact your system support person.
- Make sure you have the correct printer IP address.

Temporarily disable Web proxy servers

Proxy servers may block or restrict you from accessing certain Web sites including the Embedded Web Server. For more information, contact your system support person.

Contacting customer support

When you call customer support, describe the problem you are experiencing, the message on the display, and the troubleshooting steps you have already taken to find a solution.

You need to know your printer model type and serial number. For more information, see the label on the inside top front cover of the printer. The serial number is also listed on the menu settings page.

In the U.S. or Canada, call 1-800-539-6275. For other countries or regions, visit the Lexmark Web site at **http://support.lexmark.com**.

Notices

Product information

Product name:

Lexmark X792de, X792dte, X792dtfe, X792dtpe, X792dtme, X792dtse

Machine type:

7562, 4917

Model(s):

432, 436, dn1, dn2, gd1, gd2, dt1, dt2, gt1, gt2, df1, df2, gf1, gf2, d01, d02, g01, g02, t01, t02, g91, g92, f01, f02, g81, g82

Edition notice

August 2010

The following paragraph does not apply to any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC., PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions; therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in later editions. Improvements or changes in the products or the programs described may be made at any time.

References in this publication to products, programs, or services do not imply that the manufacturer intends to make these available in all countries in which it operates. Any reference to a product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any existing intellectual property right may be used instead. Evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, programs, or services, except those expressly designated by the manufacturer, are the user's responsibility.

For Lexmark technical support, visit **support.lexmark.com**.

For information on supplies and downloads, visit **www.lexmark.com**.

If you don't have access to the Internet, you can contact Lexmark by mail:

Lexmark International, Inc.
Bldg 004-2/CSC
740 New Circle Road NW
Lexington, KY 40550
USA

© 2010 Lexmark International, Inc.

All rights reserved.

UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RIGHTS

This software and any accompanying documentation provided under this agreement are commercial computer software and documentation developed exclusively at private expense.

Trademarks

Lexmark, Lexmark with diamond design, MarkNet, and MarkVision are trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries.

PrintCryption and ScanBack are trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc.

Mac and the Mac logo are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

PCL® is a registered trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company. PCL is Hewlett-Packard Company's designation of a set of printer commands (language) and functions included in its printer products. This printer is intended to be compatible with the PCL language. This means the printer recognizes PCL commands used in various application programs, and that the printer emulates the functions corresponding to the commands.

The following terms are trademarks or registered trademarks of these companies:

Albertus	The Monotype Corporation plc
Antique Olive	Monsieur Marcel OLIVE
Apple-Chancery	Apple Computer, Inc.
Arial	The Monotype Corporation plc
CG Times	Based on Times New Roman under license from The Monotype Corporation plc, is a product of Agfa Corporation
Chicago	Apple Computer, Inc.
Clarendon	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Eurostile	Nebiolo
Geneva	Apple Computer, Inc.
GillSans	The Monotype Corporation plc
Helvetica	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Hoefler	Jonathan Hoefler Type Foundry
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Bookman	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Mona Lisa	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Zapf Chancery	International Typeface Corporation
Joanna	The Monotype Corporation plc
Marigold	Arthur Baker
Monaco	Apple Computer, Inc.
New York	Apple Computer, Inc.
Oxford	Arthur Baker

Palatino	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Stempel Garamond	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Taffy	Agfa Corporation
Times New Roman	The Monotype Corporation plc
Univers	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) compliance information statement

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Class A limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Note: To assure compliance with FCC regulations on electromagnetic interference for a Class A computing device, use a properly shielded and grounded cable such as Lexmark part number 1021231 for parallel attach or 1021294 for USB attach. Use of a substitute cable not properly shielded and grounded may result in a violation of FCC regulations.

Modular component notice

This product contains the following modular component(s):

Lexmark regulatory type/model LEX-M01-003; FCC ID: IYLM01003; IC: 2376A-M01003

Licensing notices

The following documents can be viewed from the installation software CD.

Directory	File
CD:\LEGAL	FW_License.pdf mDNS.tar.gz Expat.txt Inst_lib.txt Instgui.txt Instgui.zip

Noise emission levels

The following measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 and reported in conformance with ISO 9296.

Note: Some modes may not apply to your product.

1-meter average sound pressure, dBA	
Printing	53 dBA
Ready	35 dBA

Values are subject to change. See **www.lexmark.com** for current values.

Waste from Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) directive

The WEEE logo signifies specific recycling programs and procedures for electronic products in countries of the European Union. We encourage the recycling of our products. If you have further questions about recycling options, visit the Lexmark Web site at **www.lexmark.com** for your local sales office phone number.

Static sensitivity notice

This symbol identifies static-sensitive parts. Do not touch in the areas near these symbols without first touching the metal frame of the printer.

ENERGY STAR

Any Lexmark product bearing the ENERGY STAR emblem on the product or on a start-up screen is certified to comply with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) ENERGY STAR requirements as configured when shipped by Lexmark.

Temperature information

Ambient temperature	15.6 to 32.2° C (60 to 90° F)
Shipping and storage temperature	-40° to 40° C (104° F)

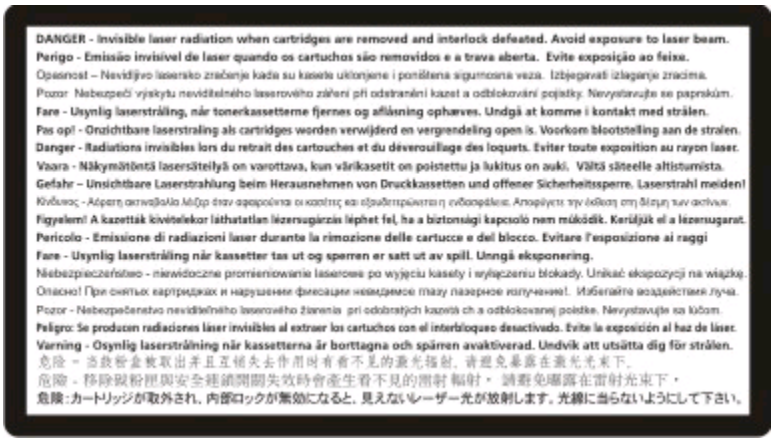
Laser notice

This product contains a Class I (1) laser producing invisible laser radiation. The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR Subchapter J for Class I (1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class I laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1.

Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The printer contains internally a Class IIIb (3b) AlGaAs dual beam laser enclosed in a non-serviceable printhead assembly operating in the wavelength of 775-800 nanometers. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation exceeding Class I levels during normal operation, user maintenance, or prescribed service condition.

Laser advisory label

A laser notice label may be affixed to this printer as shown:


DANGER - Invisible laser radiation when cartridges are removed and interlock defeated. Avoid exposure to laser beam.
Perigo - Emissão invisível de laser quando os cartuchos são removidos e a trava aberta. Evite exposição ao feixe.
Opasnost – Nevidljivo lasersko zračenje kada su kasete uklonjene i poništena sigurnosna veza. Izbjegavati izlaganje zracima.
Pozor Nebezpečí výskytu neviditelného laserového záření při odstranění kazet a odblokování pojistky. Nevystavujte se paprskům.
Fare - Usynlig laserstråling, når tonerkassetterne fjernes og aflåsning ophæves. Undgå at komme i kontakt med strålen.
Pas op! - Onzichtbare laserstraling als cartridges worden verwijderd en vergrendeling open is. Voorkom blootstelling aan de stralen.
Danger - Radiations invisibles lors du retrait des cartouches et du déverouillage des loquets. Eviter toute exposition au rayon laser.
Vaara - Näkymätöntä lasersäteilyä on varottava, kun värikasetit on poistettu ja lukitus on auki. Vältä säteelle altistumista.
Gefahr – Unsichtbare Laserstrahlung beim Herausnehmen von Druckkassetten und offener Sicherheitssperre. Laserstrahl meiden!
Κίνδυνος - Αόρατη ακτινοβολία λέιζερ όταν αφαιρούνται οι κασέτες και εξουδετερώνεται η ενδοκλείστρα. Αποφύγετε την έκθεση στη δέσμη των ακτινων.
Figyelem! A kazetták kivételekor láthatatlan lézersugárzás léphet fel, ha a biztonsági kapcsoló nem működik. Kerüljük el a lézersugarat.
Pericolo - Emissione di radiazioni laser durante la rimozione delle cartucce e del blocco. Evitare l'esposizione ai raggi
Fare - Usynlig laserstråling når kassetter tas ut og sperren er satt ut av spill. Unngå eksponering.
Niebezpieczeństwo - niewidoczne promieniowanie laserowe po wyjęciu kasety i wyłączeniu blokady. Unikać ekspozycji na wiązkę.
Опасно! При снятых картриджах и нарушении фиксации невидимое глазу лазерное излучение!. Избегайте воздействия луча.
Pozor - Nebezpečenstvo neviditeľného laserového žiarenia pri odobratých kazetách a odblokovanej poistke. Nevystavujte sa lúčom.
Peligro: Se producen radiaciones láser invisibles al extraer los cartuchos con el interbloqueo desactivado. Evite la exposición al haz de láser.
Varning - Osynlig laserstrålning när kassetterna är borttagna och spärren avaktiverad. Undvik att utsätta dig för strålen.
危险 - 当鼓粉盒被取出并且互锁失去作用时有看不见的激光辐射。请避免暴露在激光光束下。
危險 - 移除鼓粉匣與安全連鎖開關失效時會產生看不見的雷射輻射。 請避免曝露在雷射光束下。
危険：カートリッジが取外され、内部ロックが無効になると、見えないレーザー光が放射します。光線に当らないようにして下さい。

Power consumption

Product power consumption

The following table documents the power consumption characteristics of the product.

Note: Some modes may not apply to your product.

Mode	Description	Power consumption (Watts)
Printing	The product is generating hard-copy output from electronic inputs.	1000 W
Copy	The product is generating hard-copy output from hard-copy original documents.	1050 W
Scan	The product is scanning hard-copy documents.	115 W

Mode	Description	Power consumption (Watts)
Ready	The product is waiting for a print job.	70 W
Sleep Mode	The product is in a high-level energy-saving mode.	17 W
Hibernate	The product is in a low-level energy-saving mode.	0.75 W
Off	The product is plugged into a wall outlet, but the power switch is turned off.	0 W

The power consumption levels listed in the previous table represent time-averaged measurements. Instantaneous power draws may be substantially higher than the average.

Values are subject to change. See **www.lexmark.com** for current values.

Sleep Mode

This product is designed with an energy-saving mode called *Sleep Mode*. The Sleep Mode saves energy by lowering power consumption during extended periods of inactivity. The Sleep Mode is automatically engaged after this product is not used for a specified period of time, called the Sleep Mode Timeout.

Factory default Sleep Mode Timeout for this product (in minutes):	30

By using the configuration menus, the Sleep Mode Timeout can be modified between 1 minute and 240 minutes. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a low value reduces energy consumption, but may increase the response time of the product. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a high value maintains a fast response, but uses more energy.

Off mode

If this product has an off mode which still consumes a small amount of power, then to completely stop product power consumption, disconnect the power supply cord from the wall outlet.

Total energy usage

It is sometimes helpful to calculate the total product energy usage. Since power consumption claims are provided in power units of Watts, the power consumption should be multiplied by the time the product spends in each mode in order to calculate energy usage. The total product energy usage is the sum of each mode's energy usage.

Industry Canada compliance statement

This Class A digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003.

Avis de conformité aux normes de l'industrie du Canada

Cet appareil numérique de classe A est conforme aux exigences de la norme canadienne relative aux équipements pouvant causer des interférences NMB-003.

European Community (EC) directives conformity

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 1999/5/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic

compatibility and safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class A limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

Radio interference notice

Warning

This is a product that complies with the emission requirements of EN55022 Class A limits and immunity requirements of EN55024. This product is not intended to be used in residential/domestic environments.

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference, in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Notice to users of the US telephone network: FCC requirements

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules and the requirements adopted by the Administrative Council for Terminal Attachments (ACTA). On the back of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. If requested, this number must be provided to your telephone company.

This equipment uses the RJ-11C Universal Service Order Code (USOC) jack.

A plug and jack used to connect this equipment to the premises' wiring and telephone network must comply with the applicable FCC Part 68 rules and requirements adopted by the ACTA. A compliant telephone cord and modular plug is provided with this product. It is designed to be connected to a compatible modular jack that is also compliant. See your setup documentation for more information.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is used to determine the number of devices that may be connected to a telephone line. Excessive RENs on a telephone line may result in the devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most but not all areas, the sum of RENs should not exceed five (5.0). To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact your local telephone company. For products approved after July 23, 2001, the REN for this product is part of the product identifier that has the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. The digits represented by ## are the REN without a decimal point (for example, 03 is a REN of 0.3). For earlier products, the REN is shown separately on the label.

If this equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. If advance notice is not practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. You will also be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC.

The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations or procedures that could affect the operation of this equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.

If you experience trouble with this equipment, for repair or warranty information, contact Lexmark International, Inc. at **www.lexmark.com** or your Lexmark representative. If the equipment is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved.

This equipment contains no user serviceable parts. For repair and warranty information, contact Lexmark International, Inc. See the previous paragraph for contact information.

Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission, or corporation commission for information.

If your home has specially wired alarm equipment connected to the telephone line, ensure the installation of this equipment does not disable your alarm equipment. If you have questions about what will disable alarm equipment, consult your telephone company or a qualified installer.

Telephone companies report that electrical surges, typically lightning transients, are very destructive to customer terminal equipment connected to AC power sources. This has been identified as a major nationwide problem. It is recommended that the customer install an appropriate AC surge arrestor in the AC outlet to which this device is connected. An appropriate AC surge arrestor is defined as one that is suitably rated, and certified by UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), another NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory), or a recognized safety certification body in the country/region of use. This is to avoid damage to the equipment caused by local lightning strikes and other electrical surges.

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device, including fax machines, to send any message unless said message clearly contains in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission, the date and time it is sent and an identification of the business or other entity, or other individual sending the message, and the telephone number of the sending machine or such business, other entity, or individual. (The telephone number provided may not be a 900 number or any other number for which charges exceed local or long-distance transmission charges.)

See your user documentation in order to program this information into your fax machine.

Notice to users of the Canadian telephone network

This product meets the applicable Industry Canada technical specifications. The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is an indication of the maximum number of terminals allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The terminus of an interface may consist of any combination of devices, subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices does not exceed five. The modem REN is located on the rear of the equipment on the product labeling.

Telephone companies report that electrical surges, typically lightning transients, are very destructive to customer terminal equipment connected to AC power sources. This has been identified as a major nationwide problem. It is recommended that the customer install an appropriate AC surge arrestor in the AC outlet to which this device is connected. An appropriate AC surge arrestor is defined as one that is suitably rated, and certified by UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), another NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory), or a recognized safety certification body in the country/region of use. This is to avoid damage to the equipment caused by local lightning strikes and other electrical surges.

This equipment uses CA11A telephone jacks.

Avis réservé aux utilisateurs du réseau téléphonique du Canada

Ce produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industrie Canada. Le numéro REN (ringer equivalence number : numéro d'équivalence de sonnerie) fournit une indication du nombre maximum de terminaux pouvant être connectés à l'interface téléphonique. En bout de ligne, le nombre d'appareils qui peuvent être connectés n'est pas directement limité, mais la somme des REN de ces appareils ne doit pas dépasser cinq. Le numéro REN du modem est indiqué sur l'étiquette produit située à l'arrière de l'équipement.

Les compagnies de téléphone constatent que les surtensions électriques, en particulier celles dues à la foudre, entraînent d'importants dégâts sur les terminaux privés connectés à des sources d'alimentation CA. Il s'agit-là d'un problème majeur d'échelle nationale. En conséquence, il vous est recommandé de brancher un parasurtenseur dans la prise de courant à laquelle l'équipement est connecté. Utilisez un parasurtenseur répondant à des caractéristiques

nominales satisfaisantes et certifié par le laboratoire d'assureurs UL (Underwriter's Laboratories), un autre laboratoire agréé de type NRTL (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory) ou un organisme de certification agréé dans votre région ou pays. Ceci prévient tout endommagement de l'équipement causé par les orages et autres surtensions électriques.

Cet équipement utilise des prises de téléphone CA11A.

Notice to users of the New Zealand telephone network

The following are special conditions for the Facsimile User Instructions. The grant of a telepermit for any item of terminal equipment indicates only that Telecom has accepted that the item complies with minimum conditions for connection to its network. It indicates no endorsement of the product by Telecom, nor does it provide any sort of warranty. Above all, it provides no assurance that any item will work correctly in all respects with another item of telepermitted equipment of a different make or model, nor does it imply that any product is compatible with all of Telecom's network services.

This equipment shall not be set up to make automatic calls to the Telecom's 111 Emergency Service.

This equipment may not provide for the effective hand-over of a call to another device connected to the same line.

This equipment should not be used under any circumstances that may constitute a nuisance to other Telecom customers.

Some parameters required for compliance with Telecom's telepermit requirements are dependent on the equipment associated with this device. The associated equipment shall be set to operate within the following limits for compliance to Telecom's specifications:

- There shall be no more than 10 call attempts to the same number within any 30 minute period for any single manual call initiation, and
- The equipment shall go on-hook for a period of not less than 30 seconds between the end of one attempt and the beginning of the next call attempt.
- The equipment shall be set to ensure that automatic calls to different numbers are spaced such that there is not less than 5 seconds between the end of one call attempt and the beginning of another.

South Africa telecommunications notice

This modem must be used in conjunction with an approved surge protection device when connected to the PSTN.

Using this product in Switzerland

This product requires a Swiss billing tone filter (Lexmark part number 14B5109 or 80D1877) to be installed on any line which receives metering pulses in Switzerland. The Lexmark filter must be used, as metering pulses are present on all analog telephone lines in Switzerland.

Utilisation de ce produit en Suisse

Cet appareil nécessite l'utilisation d'un filtre de tonalité de facturation suisse (nº de référence Lexmark : 14B5109 ou 80D1877) devant être installé sur toute ligne recevant des impulsions de comptage en Suisse. Ce filtre doit être utilisé pour toute installation car ces impulsions existent sur toutes les lignes téléphoniques suisses.

Verwendung dieses Produkts in der Schweiz

Für dieses Produkt muss ein schweizerischer Billing Tone Filter zur Zählzeichenübertragung (Lexmark Teilenummer 14B5109 oder 80D1877) für jede Leitung installiert werden, über die in der Schweiz Zeitsteuertakte übertragen werden. Die Verwendung des Lexmark Filters ist obligatorisch, da in allen analogen Telefonleitungen in der Schweiz Zeitsteuertakte vorhanden sind.

Uso del prodotto in Svizzera

Questo prodotto richiede un filtro toni Billing svizzero, (codice Lexmark 14B5109 o 80D1877) da installare su tutte le linee che ricevono impulsi remoti in Svizzera. È necessario utilizzare il filtro Lexmark poiché gli impulsi remoti sono presenti su tutte le linee analogiche in Svizzera.

Notice to Users in the European Union

Products bearing the CE mark are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 1999/5/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

Refer to the table at the end of the Notices section for further compliance information.

Regulatory notices for wireless products

This section contains the following regulatory information pertaining to wireless products that contain transmitters, for example, but not limited to, wireless network cards or proximity card readers.

Exposure to radio frequency radiation

The radiated output power of this device is far below the radio frequency exposure limits of the FCC and other regulatory agencies. A minimum separation of 20 cm (8 inches) must be maintained between the antenna and any persons for this device to satisfy the RF exposure requirements of the FCC and other regulatory agencies.

Industry Canada (Canada)

This device complies with Industry Canada specification RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device has been designed to operate only with the antenna provided. Use of any other antenna is strictly prohibited per regulations of Industry Canada.

To prevent radio interference to the licensed service, this device is intended to be operated indoors and away from windows to provide maximum shielding. Equipment (or its transmit antenna) that is installed outdoors is subject to licensing.

The installer of this radio equipment must ensure that the antenna is located or pointed such that it does not emit RF fields in excess of Health Canada limits for the general population; consult Safety Code 6, obtainable from Health Canada's Web site www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb.

The term "IC:" before the certification/registration number only signifies that the Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Industry Canada (Canada)

Cet appareil est conforme à la norme RSS-210 d'Industry Canada. Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes :

(1) cet appareil ne doit pas provoquer d'interférences et (2) il doit accepter toute interférence reçue, y compris celles risquant d'altérer son fonctionnement.

Cet appareil a été conçu pour fonctionner uniquement avec l'antenne fournie. L'utilisation de toute autre antenne est strictement interdite par la réglementation d'Industry Canada.

En application des réglementations d'Industry Canada, l'utilisation d'une antenne de gain supérieur est strictement interdite.

Pour empêcher toute interférence radio au service faisant l'objet d'une licence, cet appareil doit être utilisé à l'intérieur et loin des fenêtres afin de garantir une protection optimale.

Si le matériel (ou son antenne d'émission) est installé à l'extérieur, il doit faire l'objet d'une licence.

L'installateur de cet équipement radio doit veiller à ce que l'antenne soit implantée et dirigée de manière à n'émettre aucun champ HF dépassant les limites fixées pour l'ensemble de la population par Santé Canada. Reportez-vous au Code de sécurité 6 que vous pouvez consulter sur le site Web de Santé Canada www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb.

Le terme « IC » précédant le numéro de d'accréditation/inscription signifie simplement que le produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industry Canada.

Notice to users in the European Union

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC and 2005/32/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and the ecodesign of energy-using products.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class A limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

Products equipped with 2.4GHz Wireless LAN option are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 1999/5/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.

Operation is allowed in all EU and EFTA countries, but is restricted to indoor use only.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product may be used in the countries indicated in the table below.

AT	BE	BG	CH	CY	CZ	DE	DK	EE
EL	ES	FI	FR	HR	HU	IE	IS	IT
LI	LT	LU	LV	MT	NL	NO	PL	PT
RO	SE	SI	SK	TR	UK			

Česky	Společnost Lexmark International, Inc. tímto prohlašuje, že výrobek tento výrobek je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved, at dette produkt overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch	Hiermit erklärt Lexmark International, Inc., dass sich das Gerät dieses Gerät in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Ελληνική	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Η LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ΑΥΤΟ ΤΟ ΠΡΟΪΟΝ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
English	Hereby, Lexmark International, Inc., declares that this type of equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español	Por medio de la presente, Lexmark International, Inc. declara que este producto cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Eesti	Käesolevaga kinnitab Lexmark International, Inc., et seade see toode vastab direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele muudele asjakohastele sätetele.
Suomi	Lexmark International, Inc. vakuuttaa täten, että tämä tuote on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja muiden sitä koskevien direktiivin ehtojen mukainen.
Français	Par la présente, Lexmark International, Inc. déclare que l'appareil ce produit est conforme aux exigences fondamentales et autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Magyar	Alulírott, Lexmark International, Inc. nyilatkozom, hogy a termék megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Íslenska	Hér með lýsir Lexmark International, Inc. yfir því að þessi vara er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Italiano	Con la presente Lexmark International, Inc. dichiara che questo questo prodotto è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski	Ar šo Lexmark International, Inc. deklarē, ka šis izstrādājums atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių	Šiuo Lexmark International, Inc. deklaruoja, kad šis produktas atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB direktyvos nuostatas.
Malti	Bil-preżenti, Lexmark International, Inc., jiddikjara li dan il-prodott huwa konformi mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma dispożizzjonijiet oħrajn relevanti li jinsabu fid-Direttiva 1999/5/KE.
Nederlands	Hierbij verklaart Lexmark International, Inc. dat het toestel dit product in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Norsk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved at dette produktet er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Polski	Niniejszym Lexmark International, Inc. oświadcza, że niniejszy produkt jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português	A Lexmark International Inc. declara que este este produto está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Diretiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensky	Lexmark International, Inc. týmto vyhlasuje, že tento produkt spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia smernice 1999/5/ES.
Slovensko	Lexmark International, Inc. izjavlja, da je ta izdelek v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Svenska	Härmed intygar Lexmark International, Inc. att denna produkt står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Statement of Limited Warranty

Lexmark X792de, X792dte, X792dtfe, X792dtpe, X792dtme, X792dtse

Lexmark International, Inc., Lexington, KY

This limited warranty applies to the United States and Canada. For customers outside the U.S., refer to the country-specific warranty information that came with your product.

This limited warranty applies to this product only if it was originally purchased for your use, and not for resale, from Lexmark or a Lexmark Remarketer, referred to in this statement as "Remarketer."

Limited warranty

Lexmark warrants that this product:

—Is manufactured from new parts, or new and serviceable used parts, which perform like new parts

—Is, during normal use, free from defects in material and workmanship

If this product does not function as warranted during the warranty period, contact a Remarketer or Lexmark for repair or replacement (at Lexmark's option).

If this product is a feature or option, this statement applies only when that feature or option is used with the product for which it was intended. To obtain warranty service, you may be required to present the feature or option with the product.

If you transfer this product to another user, warranty service under the terms of this statement is available to that user for the remainder of the warranty period. You should transfer proof of original purchase and this statement to that user.

Limited warranty service

The warranty period starts on the date of original purchase as shown on the purchase receipt and ends 12 months later provided that the warranty period for any supplies and for any maintenance items included with the printer shall end earlier if it, or its original contents, are substantially used up, depleted, or consumed.

To obtain warranty service you may be required to present proof of original purchase. You may be required to deliver your product to the Remarketer or Lexmark, or ship it prepaid and suitably packaged to a Lexmark designated location. You are responsible for loss of, or damage to, a product in transit to the Remarketer or the Lexmark designated location.

When warranty service involves the exchange of a product or part, the item replaced becomes the property of the Remarketer or Lexmark. The replacement may be a new or repaired item.

The replacement item assumes the remaining warranty period of the original product.

Replacement is not available to you if the product you present for exchange is defaced, altered, in need of a repair not included in warranty service, damaged beyond repair, or if the product is not free of all legal obligations, restrictions, liens, and encumbrances.

Before you present this product for warranty service, remove all print cartridges, programs, data, and removable storage media (unless directed otherwise by Lexmark).

For further explanation of your warranty alternatives and the nearest Lexmark authorized servicer in your area contact Lexmark on the World Wide Web at **http://support.lexmark.com**.

Remote technical support is provided for this product throughout its warranty period. For products no longer covered by a Lexmark warranty, technical support may not be available or only be available for a fee.

Extent of limited warranty

Lexmark does not warrant uninterrupted or error-free operation of any product or the durability or longevity of prints produced by any product.

Warranty service does not include repair of failures caused by:

—Modification or unauthorized attachments

—Accidents, misuse, abuse or use inconsistent with Lexmark user’s guides, manuals, instructions or guidance

—Unsuitable physical or operating environment

—Maintenance by anyone other than Lexmark or a Lexmark authorized servicer

—Operation of a product beyond the limit of its duty cycle

—Use of printing media outside of Lexmark specifications

—Refurbishment, repair, refilling or remanufacture by a third party of products, supplies or parts

—Products, supplies, parts, materials (such as toners and inks), software, or interfaces not furnished by Lexmark

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NEITHER LEXMARK NOR ITS THIRD PARTY SUPPLIERS OR REMARKETERS MAKE ANY OTHER WARRANTY OR CONDITION OF ANY KIND, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THIS PRODUCT, AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND SATISFACTORY QUALITY. ANY WARRANTIES THAT MAY NOT BE DISCLAIMED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD. NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WILL APPLY AFTER THIS PERIOD. ALL INFORMATION, SPECIFICATIONS, PRICES, AND SERVICES ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE AT ANY TIME WITHOUT NOTICE.

Limitation of liability

Your sole remedy under this limited warranty is set forth in this document. For any claim concerning performance or nonperformance of Lexmark or a Remarketer for this product under this limited warranty, you may recover actual damages up to the limit set forth in the following paragraph.

Lexmark's liability for actual damages from any cause whatsoever will be limited to the amount you paid for the product that caused the damages. This limitation of liability will not apply to claims by you for bodily injury or damage to real property or tangible personal property for which Lexmark is legally liable. **IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, LOST SAVINGS, INCIDENTAL DAMAGE, OR OTHER ECONOMIC OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.** This is true even if you advise Lexmark or a Remarketer of the possibility of such damages. Lexmark is not liable for any claim by you based on a third party claim.

This limitation of remedies also applies to claims against any Suppliers and Remarketers of Lexmark. Lexmark's and its Suppliers' and Remarketers' limitations of remedies are not cumulative. Such Suppliers and Remarketers are intended beneficiaries of this limitation.

Additional rights

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, or do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the limitations or exclusions contained above may not apply to you.

This limited warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

LEXMARK SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THIS PRODUCT: BY USING THIS PRODUCT, YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY ALL THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THE TERMS OF THIS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY RETURN THE PRODUCT UNUSED AND REQUEST A REFUND OF THE AMOUNT YOU PAID. IF YOU ARE INSTALLING THIS PRODUCT FOR USE BY OTHER PARTIES, YOU AGREE TO INFORM THE USERS THAT USE OF THE PRODUCT INDICATES ACCEPTANCE OF THESE TERMS.

LEXMARK SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

This License Agreement ("Software License Agreement") is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and Lexmark International, Inc. ("Lexmark") that, to the extent your Lexmark product or Software Program is not otherwise subject to a written software license agreement between you and Lexmark or its suppliers, governs your use of any Software Program installed on or provided by Lexmark for use in connection with your Lexmark product. The term "Software Program" includes machine-readable instructions, audio/visual content (such as images and recordings), and associated media, printed materials and electronic documentation, whether incorporated into, distributed with or for use with your Lexmark product.

1 **STATEMENT OF SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY**. Lexmark warrants that the media (e.g., diskette or compact disk) on which the Software Program (if any) is furnished is free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use during the warranty period. The warranty period is ninety (90) days and commences on the date the Software Program is delivered to the original end-user. This limited warranty applies only to Software Program media purchased new from Lexmark or an Authorized Lexmark Reseller or Distributor. Lexmark will replace the Software Program should it be determined that the media does not conform to this limited warranty.

2 **DISCLAIMER AND LIMITATION OF WARRANTIES**. EXCEPT AS PROVIDED IN THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT AND TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, LEXMARK AND ITS SUPPLIERS PROVIDE THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM "AS IS" AND HEREBY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND ABSENCE OF VIRUSES, ALL WITH REGARD TO THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM. TO THE EXTENT LEXMARK CANNOT BY LAW DISCLAIM ANY COMPONENT OF THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, LEXMARK LIMITS THE DURATION OF SUCH WARRANTIES TO THE 90-DAY TERM OF THE EXPRESS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY.

   This Agreement is to be read in conjunction with certain statutory provisions, as that may be in force from time to time, that imply warranties or conditions or impose obligations on Lexmark that cannot be excluded or modified. If any such provisions apply, then to the extent Lexmark is able, Lexmark hereby limits its liability for breach of those provisions to one of the following: providing you a replacement copy of the Software Program or reimbursement of the price paid for the Software Program.

   The Software Program may include internet links to other software applications and/or internet web pages hosted and operated by third parties unaffiliated with Lexmark. You acknowledge and agree that Lexmark is not responsible in any way for the hosting, performance, operation, maintenance, or content of, such software applications and/or internet web pages.

3 **LIMITATION OF REMEDY**. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL LIABILITY OF LEXMARK UNDER THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT IS EXPRESSLY LIMITED TO THE GREATER OF THE PRICE PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM AND FIVE U.S. DOLLARS (OR THE EQUIVALENT IN LOCAL CURRENCY). YOUR SOLE REMEDY AGAINST LEXMARK IN ANY DISPUTE UNDER THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT SHALL BE TO SEEK TO RECOVER ONE OF THESE AMOUNTS, UPON PAYMENT OF WHICH LEXMARK SHALL BE RELEASED AND DISCHARGED OF ALL FURTHER OBLIGATIONS AND LIABILITY TO YOU.

   IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK, ITS SUPPLIERS, SUBSIDIARIES, OR RESELLERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, EXEMPLARY, PUNITIVE, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOST PROFITS OR REVENUES, LOST SAVINGS, INTERRUPTION OF USE OR ANY LOSS OF, INACCURACY IN, OR DAMAGE TO, DATA OR RECORDS, FOR CLAIMS OF THIRD PARTIES, OR DAMAGE TO REAL OR TANGIBLE PROPERTY, FOR LOSS OF PRIVACY ARISING OUT OR IN ANY WAY RELATED TO THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM, OR OTHERWISE IN CONNECTION WITH ANY PROVISION OF THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT), REGARDLESS OF THE NATURE OF THE CLAIM, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO BREACH OF WARRANTY OR CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR STRICT LIABILITY), AND EVEN IF LEXMARK, OR ITS SUPPLIERS, AFFILIATES, OR REMARKETERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, OR FOR ANY CLAIM BY YOU BASED ON A THIRD-PARTY CLAIM, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THIS EXCLUSION OF DAMAGES IS DETERMINED LEGALLY INVALID. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE-STATED REMEDIES FAIL OF THEIR ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

4 **U.S.A. STATE LAWS**. This Software Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts or the exclusion of limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitations may not apply to you.

5 **LICENSE GRANT**. Lexmark grants you the following rights provided you comply with all terms and conditions of this License Agreement:

   a **Use**. You may Use one (1) copy of the Software Program. The term "Use" means storing, loading, installing, executing, or displaying the Software Program. If Lexmark has licensed the Software Program to you for concurrent use, you must limit the number of authorized users to the number specified in your agreement with Lexmark. You may not separate the components of the Software Program for use on more than one computer. You agree that you will not Use the Software Program, in whole or in part, in any manner that has the effect of overriding, modifying, eliminating, obscuring, altering or de-emphasizing the visual appearance of any trademark, trade name, trade dress or intellectual property notice that appears on any computer display screens normally generated by, or as a result of, the Software Program.

   b **Copying**. You may make one (1) copy of the Software Program solely for purposes of backup, archiving, or installation, provided the copy contains all of the original Software Program's proprietary notices. You may not copy the Software Program to any public or distributed network.

   c **Reservation of Rights**. The Software Program, including all fonts, is copyrighted and owned by Lexmark International, Inc. and/or its suppliers. Lexmark reserves all rights not expressly granted to you in this License Agreement.

   d **Freeware**. Notwithstanding the terms and conditions of this License Agreement, all or any portion of the Software Program that constitutes software provided under public license by third parties ("Freeware") is licensed to you subject to the terms and conditions of the software license agreement accompanying such Freeware, whether in the form of a discrete agreement, shrink-wrap license, or electronic license terms at the time of download. Use of the Freeware by you shall be governed entirely by the terms and conditions of such license.

6 **TRANSFER**. You may transfer the Software Program to another end-user. Any transfer must include all software components, media, printed materials, and this License Agreement and you may not retain copies of the Software Program or components thereof. The transfer may not be an indirect transfer, such as a consignment. Prior to the transfer, the end-user receiving the transferred Software Program must agree to all these License Agreement terms. Upon transfer of the Software Program, your license is automatically terminated. You may not rent, sublicense, or assign the Software Program except to the extent provided in this License Agreement, and any attempt to do so shall be void.

7 **UPGRADES**. To Use a Software Program identified as an upgrade, you must first be licensed to the original Software Program identified by Lexmark as eligible for the upgrade. After upgrading, you may no longer use the original Software Program that formed the basis for your upgrade eligibility.

8 **LIMITATION ON REVERSE ENGINEERING**. You may not alter, decrypt, reverse engineer, reverse assemble, reverse compile or otherwise translate the Software Program, except as and to the extent expressly permitted to do so by applicable law for the purposes of inter-operability, error correction, and security testing. If you have such statutory rights, you will notify Lexmark in writing of any intended reverse engineering, reverse assembly, or reverse compilation. You may not decrypt the Software Program unless necessary for the legitimate Use of the Software Program.

9 **ADDITIONAL SOFTWARE**. This License Agreement applies to updates or supplements to the original Software Program provided by Lexmark unless Lexmark provides other terms along with the update or supplement.

10 **TERM**. This License Agreement is effective unless terminated or rejected. You may reject or terminate this license at any time by destroying all copies of the Software Program, together with all modifications, documentation, and merged portions in any form, or as otherwise described herein. Lexmark may terminate your license upon notice if you fail to comply with any of the terms of this License Agreement. Upon such termination, you agree

to destroy all copies of the Software Program together with all modifications, documentation, and merged portions in any form.

11 **TAXES**. You agree that you are responsible for payment of any taxes including, without limitation, any goods and services and personal property taxes, resulting from this Agreement or your Use of the Software Program.

12 **LIMITATION ON ACTIONS**. No action, regardless of form, arising out of this Agreement may be brought by either party more than two years after the cause of action has arisen, except as provided under applicable law.

13 **APPLICABLE LAW**. This Agreement is governed by the laws of the Commonwealth of Kentucky, United States of America. No choice of law rules in any jurisdiction shall apply. The UN Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

14 **UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS**. The Software Program has been developed entirely at private expense. Rights of the United States Government to use the Software Program is as set forth in this Agreement and as restricted in DFARS 252.227-7014 and in similar FAR provisions (or any equivalent agency regulation or contract clause).

15 **CONSENT TO USE OF DATA**. You agree that Lexmark, its affiliates, and agents may collect and use information you provide in relation to support services performed with respect to the Software Program and requested by you. Lexmark agrees not to use this information in a form that personally identifies you except to the extent necessary to provide such services.

16 **EXPORT RESTRICTIONS**. You may not (a) acquire, ship, transfer, or reexport, directly or indirectly, the Software Program or any direct product therefrom, in violation of any applicable export laws or (b) permit the Software Program to be used for any purpose prohibited by such export laws, including, without limitation, nuclear, chemical, or biological weapons proliferation.

17 **AGREEMENT TO CONTRACT ELECTRONICALLY**. You and Lexmark agree to form this License Agreement electronically. This means that when you click the "Agree" or "Yes" button on this page or use this product, you acknowledge your agreement to these License Agreement terms and conditions and that you are doing so with the intent to "sign" a contract with Lexmark.

18 **CAPACITY AND AUTHORITY TO CONTRACT**. You represent that you are of the legal age of majority in the place you sign this License Agreement and, if applicable, you are duly authorized by your employer or principal to enter into this contract.

19 **ENTIRE AGREEMENT**. This License Agreement (including any addendum or amendment to this License Agreement that is included with the Software Program) is the entire agreement between you and Lexmark relating to the Software Program. Except as otherwise provided for herein, these terms and conditions supersede all prior or contemporaneous oral or written communications, proposals, and representations with respect to the Software Program or any other subject matter covered by this License Agreement (except to the extent such extraneous terms do not conflict with the terms of this License Agreement, any other written agreement signed by you and Lexmark relating to your Use of the Software Program). To the extent any Lexmark policies or programs for support services conflict with the terms of this License Agreement, the terms of this License Agreement shall control.

MICROSOFT CORPORATION NOTICES

1 This product may incorporate intellectual property owned by Microsoft Corporation. The terms and conditions upon which Microsoft is licensing such intellectual property may be found at **http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=52369.**

2 This product is based on Microsoft Print Schema technology. You may find the terms and conditions upon which Microsoft is licensing such intellectual property at **http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=83288**.

ADOBE SYSTEMS INCORPORATED NOTICE

Contains Flash®, Flash® Lite™ and/or Reader® technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated

This Product contains Adobe® Flash® player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright © 1995-2007 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Reader and Flash are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Index

Numerics

1565 Emulation error, load emulation option 269
2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder
  installing 37
200 paper jam 242
2000-sheet high-capacity feeder
  loading 66
201 paper jam 242
202–203 paper jams 243
230 paper jam 244
231–239 paper jams 245
24x paper jam 245
250 paper jam 246
280–289 paper jam 247
290–292 paper jams 248
31.xx Missing or Defective [color] cartridge 262
32.xx [color] cartridge part number unsupported by device 262
34 Incorrect paper size, open [src] 262
35 Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature 262
37 Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation 263
37 Insufficient memory to collate job 263
37 Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted 263
38 Memory full 263
39 Complex page, some data may not have printed 263
40 [color] invalid refill, change cartridge 263
400–403 paper jams 248
431–438 paper jams 249
455 staple jam 249
460–461 paper jams 248
51 Defective flash detected 263
52 Not enough free space in flash memory for resources 264
54 Network [x] software error 264
54 Serial option [x] error 264
54 Standard network software error 264
55 Unsupported option in slot [x] 264
550-sheet tray
  installing 37
550-sheet tray (standard or optional)
  loading 63
56 Parallel port [x] disabled 265
56 Serial port [x] disabled 265
56 Standard parallel port disabled 265
56 Standard USB port disabled 265
56 USB port [x] disabled 265
57 Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored 265
58 Input config error 266
58 Too many bins attached 266
58 Too many disks installed 266
58 Too many flash options installed 266
58 Too many trays attached 266
59 Incompatible output bin [x] 267
61 Remove defective disk 267
62 Disk full 267
80.xx Fuser life warning 267
80.xx Fuser missing 267
80.xx Fuser near life warning 267
80.xx Replace fuser 267
82.xx Replace waste toner bottle 268
82.xx Waste toner bottle missing 268
82.xx Waste toner bottle nearly full 268
83.xx Replace transfer module 268
83.xx Transfer module life warning 268
83.xx Transfer module missing 268
840.01 Scanner disabled by admin 269
840.02 Scanner disabled. Contact system administrator if problem persists. 269
88.xx [Color] cartridge critically low 269
88.xx [color] cartridge low 268, 269
88.xx [color] cartridge nearly low 268

A

accessing the system board 20
Active NIC menu 147
adding a date and time stamp 97
adding bookmarks
  using the Embedded Web Server 53
  using the printer control panel 53
adding bookmarks from the printer control panel 53
adding bookmarks using the Embedded Web Server 53
address book, fax
  using 116
ADF
  copying using 90
ADF parts
  cleaning 224
ADF pick assembly
  ordering 230
Adjusting color 252
adjusting copy quality 94
adjusting Sleep Mode 58
adjusting toner darkness 86
advanced options, touch-screen copy 100
An error has occurred with the flash drive 252
AppleTalk menu 152
applications list
  home screen 52
assigning a custom paper type name 72
attaching cables 38
attaching the system board cover 20
available internal options 19
avoiding paper jams 240

B

Bin Setup menu 145
black-and-white copying 92
black-and-white printing 86
blank pages 289
blocking junk faxes 118
buttons, printer control panel 14
buttons, touch screen 16

C

cables
  Ethernet 38
  USB 38
calling customer support 305
canceling
  print job, from computer 88
canceling a print job
  from a computer 88
  from the printer control panel 88
cannot open Embedded Web Server 304
card stock
  loading in multipurpose feeder 68
  tips 81
Change [input src] to [custom type name] load [orientation] 253
Change [src] to [custom string] 253
Change [src] to [custom string] load [orientation] 253
Change [src] to [custom type name] 253
Change [src] to [size] 254
Change [src] to [size] [type] 254
Change [src] to [size] [type] load [orientation] 254
Change [src] to [size] load [orientation] 254
Check [src] orientation or guides 255
checking an unresponsive printer 270
checking an unresponsive scanner 276
checking printer status
  on Embedded Web Server 237
checking printer status using the Embedded Web Server 237
checking status of supplies 228
checking the status of supplies 228
checking the virtual display
  using the Embedded Web Server 238
checking virtual display
  using the Embedded Web Server 238
choosing a fax connection 109
cleaning
  ADF parts 224
  exterior of the printer 222
  scanner glass 223
cleaning kit
  ordering 231
cleaning the printhead lenses 226
Close [tray] door 255
Close finisher side door 255
Close finisher top cover 255
Close front door 255
Close left side door 255
Close paper transport cover 255
Close top access cover 255
collating copies 95
confidential print jobs 82
  printing from a Macintosh computer 82
  printing from Windows 82
Confidential Print menu 162
configuration information
  wireless network 41
configurations
  printer 10
Configure MP menu 137
configuring e-mail settings 101
configuring port settings 49
connecting printer to distinctive ring service 112
connecting the printer to regional adapters 112
conservation settings
  brightness, adjusting 59
  Quiet Mode 57
  Sleep Mode 58, 59
  standard exit bin lighting 60
conserving supplies 56
contacting customer support 305
control panel, printer 14
copy quality
  adjusting 94
copy screen
  advanced options 100
  options 98, 99, 100, 125
Copy Settings menu 172
copy troubleshooting
  copier does not respond 273
  partial document or photo copies 275
  poor copy quality 274
  poor scanned image quality 277
  scanner unit does not close 274
copying
  adding a date and time stamp 97
  adding an overlay message 97
  adjusting quality 94
  canceling a copy job 97, 98
  collating copies 95
  custom job (job build) 96
  different paper sizes 93
  enlarging 94
  in black-and-white 92
  multiple pages on one sheet 96
  on both sides of the paper (duplexing) 93
  on letterhead 91
  on transparencies 91
  photos 91
  placing separator sheets between copies 95
  quick copy 90
  reducing 94
  selecting a tray 92
  to a different size 92
  using the ADF 90
  using the scanner glass (flatbed) 91
copying different paper sizes 93
copying multiple pages on one sheet 96
copying on both sides of the paper (duplexing) 93
copying on letterhead 91
copying on transparencies 91
copying photos 91
corrupted printer hard disk 255
creating a fax destination shortcut
  using the Embedded Web Server 115
creating an FTP shortcut
  using the Embedded Web Server 123
creating profiles
  using the ScanBack Utility 128
Custom Bin Names menu 144
custom name
  configuring 72
Custom Names menu 143
custom paper type name
  creating 72
Custom Scan Sizes menu 144
Custom Type [x]
  changing name 72
  changing paper type 72

Custom Types menu 143

D

date and time, fax
setting 113
daylight savings time, faxing 114
Default Source menu 134
destination
adding 54
deleting 54
editing 54
different paper sizes, copying 93
directory list
printing 85
disk wiping 219
Disk Wiping menu 162
display troubleshooting
display is blank 270
display shows only diamonds 270
display, printer control panel 14
adjusting brightness 59
disposing of printer hard disk 218
distinctive ring service, fax
connecting to 112
documents, printing
from Macintosh 79
from Windows 79
duplexing 93

E

Eco-Mode setting 57
Edit Security Setups menu 160
email, sending
using the touch screen 103
Embedded Web Server
accessing 237
administrator settings 237
checking printer status 237
checking supplies 228
creating a fax destination shortcut 115
creating an FTP shortcut 123
creating e-mail shortcuts 102
functions 237
initial fax setup 109
networking settings 237
problem accessing 304
setting up e-mail alerts 238
using 237
Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide
where to find 237
emission
notices 308, 309, 311, 312, 315, 316
Empty the hole punch box 256
encrypting the printer hard disk 221
enlarging a copy 94
envelopes
loading in multipurpose feeder 68
tips on using 80
environmental settings
brightness, adjusting 59
conserving supplies 56
Hibernate Mode 59
Quiet Mode 57
Sleep Mode 58
standard exit bin lighting 60
erasing hard disk memory 219
erasing non-volatile memory 219
erasing volatile memory 219
Ethernet networking
Macintosh 47
Windows 47
Ethernet port 38
exit bins
linking 72
exporting a configuration
using the Embedded Web Server 55
exporting a configuration using the Embedded Web Server 55
exterior of the printer
cleaning 222
e-mail
canceling 105
disabling 252
enabling 252
e-mail alerts
low supply levels 238
paper jam 238
setting up 238
e-mail function
setting up 101
e-mail screen
advanced options 106, 107
options 105, 106, 107
E-mail Settings menu 189
e-mail shortcuts, creating
using the Embedded Web Server 102
e-mail, sending
using a shortcut number 103
e-mailing
adding message line 104
adding subject line 104
changing output file type 104
configuring e-mail settings 101
creating shortcuts using the Embedded Web Server 102
creating shortcuts using the touch screen 102
setting up e-mail function 101
using a shortcut number 103
using the address book 103
using the touch screen 103

F

factory defaults
restoring 239
FAQ about color printing 301
fax
disabling 252
document type, settings 118
enabling 252
fax connection
connecting the printer to the wall jack 110
connecting to a DSL line 110
connecting to a PBX or ISDN 111
fax connections
regional adapters 112
fax log
viewing 117
Fax Mode (Analog Fax Setup) menu 179
Fax Mode (Fax Server Setup) menu 187
Fax partition inoperative. Contact system administrator. 256
fax screen
advanced options 119, 120
options 119
Fax server 'To Format' not set up. Contact system administrator. 256
Fax Station Name not set up 257
Fax Station Number not set up 257
fax troubleshooting
caller ID is not shown 278

can receive but not send faxes 280
can send but not receive faxes 280
cannot send or receive a fax 278
received fax has poor print quality 281
faxing
blocking junk faxes 118
canceling a fax job 118
changing resolution 116
choosing a fax connection 109
configuring the printer to observe daylight saving time 114
creating shortcuts using the Embedded Web Server 115
creating shortcuts using the touch screen 115
distinctive ring service 112
fax setup 109
forwarding faxes 121
holding faxes 120
making a fax lighter or darker 117
sending a fax at a scheduled time 117
sending using the computer 114
sending using the touch screen 114
setting the date and time 113
setting the fax number or station number 113
setting the outgoing fax name or station name 113
using shortcuts 116
using the address book 116
viewing a fax log 117
FCC notices 308, 312, 315
features
Scan Center 128
fiber optic
network setup 47
finding more information about the printer 9
finisher
finishing features 86
supported paper sizes 86
finisher features 86
Finishing menu 206
firmware card
installing 25
flash drive
printing from 84
Flash Drive menu 199
flash drives
supported file types 83
flash memory card
installing 25
troubleshooting 286
font sample list
printing 85
forwarding faxes 121
FTP
scanning using address book 123
FTP address
creating shortcuts using the touch screen 124
FTP screen
advanced options 126
options 124, 125
FTP Settings menu 194
fuser or transfer module
ordering 230

G

General Settings menu 165
Green settings
Eco-Mode 57
Quiet Mode 57
green settings
Hibernate Mode 59

H

hard disk
wiping 219
hard disk memory
erasing 219
held jobs 82
printing from a Macintosh computer 82
printing from Windows 82
Help menu 217
Hibernate Mode
using 59
holding faxes 120
home screen
applications 52
customizing 52
home screen applications
using 52
home screen buttons
description 15
HTML menu 215

I

Image menu 216
importing a configuration
using the Embedded Web Server 55
importing a configuration using the Embedded Web Server 55
indicator light is blinking
troubleshooting 252
initial fax setup 109
using the Embedded Web Server 109
Insert hole punch box 257
Insert staple cartridge 258
Install bin [x] 257
Install Tray [x] 257
installing a memory card 23
installing an Internal Solutions Port 27
installing on a wireless network
using Windows 42
installing options
order of installation 37
installing printer
on wireless network 42
installing printer hard disk 31
installing printer on a network
wired networking 47
installing printer on a wireless network
using Macintosh 44
installing printer software
adding options 41
installing the 2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder 37
installing the 550-sheet tray 37
installing the printer software 40
internal print server
troubleshooting 287
Internal Solutions Port
changing port settings 49
installing 27
troubleshooting 286
IPv6 menu 151
isolating print quality problems 86, 288

J

jams
  avoiding 240
  locating jam areas 240
  locations 240
  numbers 240
jams, clearing
  200 paper jam 242
  201 paper jam 242
  202–203 paper jams 243
  230 paper jam 244
  231–239 paper jams 245
  24x paper jam 245
  250 paper jam 246
  280–289 paper jam 247
  280–299 224
  290–292 paper jams 248
  400–403 paper jams 248
  431–438 paper jams 249
  455 staple jam 249
  460–461 paper jams 248

L

labels, paper
  tips 81
letterhead
  copying on 91
  loading, 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder 66
  loading, multipurpose feeder 79
  loading, trays 79
letterhead printing 79
light colored line, white line, or incorrectly colored line appears on prints 293
light, indicator 14
linking
  exit bins 72
linking exit bins 72
linking trays 71
Load Manual Feeder with [custom string] 259
Load Manual Feeder with [custom type name] 259
Load Manual Feeder with [size] 259
Load Manual Feeder with [type] [size] 259
Load staples 259
loading
  2000-sheet high-capacity feeder 66
  550-sheet tray (standard or optional) 63
  letterhead in 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder 66
  letterhead in multipurpose feeder 79
  multipurpose feeder 68
loading card stock
  in multipurpose feeder 68
loading envelopes
  in multipurpose feeder 68
loading the multipurpose feeder 68
loading the standard tray 63
loading transparencies
  in multipurpose feeder 68
lock, security 13

M

making copies using paper from selected tray 92
memory
  types installed on printer 218
memory card
  installing 23
  troubleshooting 287
Memory full, cannot print faxes 260
menu settings page
  printing 40
menus
  Active NIC 147
  AppleTalk 152
  Bin Setup 145
  Confidential Print 162
  Configure MP 137
  Copy Settings 172
  Custom Bin Names 144
  Custom Names 143
  Custom Scan Sizes 144
  Custom Types 143
  Default Source 134
  diagram of 131
  Disk Wiping 162
  Edit Security Setups 160
  E-mail Settings 189
  Fax Mode (Analog Fax Setup) 179
  Fax Mode (Fax Server Setup) 187
  Finishing 206
  Flash Drive 199
  FTP Settings 194
  General Settings 165
  Help 217
  HTML 215
  Image 216
  IPv6 151
  Miscellaneous 161
  Network [x] 147
  Network Card 149
  Network Reports 149
  Paper Loading 141
  Paper Size/Type 134
  Paper Texture 138
  Paper Weight 140
  Parallel [x] 155
  PCL Emul 212
  PDF 211
  PostScript 212
  Quality 208
  Reports 146
  Security Audit Log 163
  Serial [x] 157
  Set Date and Time 164
  Setup 204
  SMTP Setup menu 159
  Standard Network 147
  Standard USB 153
  Substitute Size 138
  Supplies 132
  TCP/IP 150
  Utilities 211
  Wireless 152
  XPS 216
menus diagram 131
Miscellaneous menu 161
moving the printer 235, 236
multipurpose feeder
  loading 68

N

Network [x] menu 147
Network Card menu 149
network options 19
Network Reports menu 149
network setup page
  printing 40
Networking Guide
  where to find 237
noise emission levels 309
non-volatile memory 218
  erasing 219

notices 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317

O

options
  2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder, installing 37
  550-sheet tray, installing 37
  fax card 19
  firmware card 25
  firmware cards 19
  flash memory card 25
  Internal Solutions Port, installing 27
  memory card, installing 23
  memory cards 19
  network 19
  order of installation 37
  ports 19
  printer hard disk, installing 31
  printer hard disk, removing 36
  updating in printer driver 41
options, touch-screen
  copy 98, 99, 100, 125
  e-mail 105, 106, 107
  fax 119, 120
  FTP 124, 125, 126
  scan to computer 129, 130
ordering
  cleaning kit 231
  fuser or transfer module 230
  print cartridges 229
  staple cartridges 230
  waste toner bottle 230
ordering a print cartridge 229
output file type
  changing 104

P

paper
  characteristics 73
  different sizes, copying 93
  letterhead 74
  preprinted forms 74
  recycled 74
  saving 96
  selecting 74
  storing 76
  unacceptable 74
  Universal Paper Size 144
  Universal size setting 62
  using recycled 56
paper feed troubleshooting
  message remains after jam is cleared 288
paper jams
  avoiding 240
paper jams, clearing
  200 paper jam 242
  201 paper jam 242
  202–203 paper jams 243
  230 paper jam 244
  231–239 paper jams 245
  24x paper jam 245
  250 paper jam 246
  280–289 paper jam 247
  280–299 224
  290–292 paper jams 248
  400–403 paper jams 248
  431–438 paper jams 249
  460–461 paper jams 248
Paper Loading menu 141
paper size
  setting 62
Paper Size/Type menu 134
paper sizes
  supported by printer 76
Paper Texture menu 138
paper type
  setting 62
paper types
  duplex support 78
  supported by printer 78
  where to load 78
Paper Weight menu 140
Parallel [x] menu 155
PCL Emul menu 212
PDF menu 211
photos
  copying 91
placing separator sheets between copies 95
port settings
  configuring 49
PostScript menu 212
print cartridge
  replacing 231
print cartridges
  ordering 229
print irregularities 293
print job
  canceling, from computer 88
print quality
  cleaning the ADF parts 224
  cleaning the printhead lenses 226
  cleaning the scanner glass 223
  isolating problems 86
print quality troubleshooting
  black streaks on a page 297
  blank pages 289
  characters have jagged edges 289
  clipped images 290
  colors not aligned properly 290
  fine horizontal lines 291
  gray background on prints 292
  isolating print quality problems 288
  light colored line, white line, or incorrectly colored line appears on prints 293
  poor transparency quality 301
  print irregularities 293
  print is too dark 294
  print is too light 295
  repeating print defects 296
  shadow images appear on prints 291
  skewed print 296
  solid color or black pages appear on prints 297
  streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 298
  streaked vertical lines 298
  toner fog or background shading 299
  toner rubs off 300
  toner specks 300
  uneven print density 301
  white streaks on a page 297
print troubleshooting
  error reading USB drive 270
  held jobs do not print 271
  incorrect characters print 272
  incorrect margins 292
  jammed pages are not reprinted 288
  job prints from wrong tray 272
  job prints on wrong paper 272
  jobs do not print 270
  Large jobs do not collate 273
  multiple-language PDF files do not print 270

paper curl 293
paper frequently jams 287
print job takes longer than expected 272
tray linking does not work 272
unexpected page breaks 273
printer
configurations 10
finishing features 86
moving 235, 236
shipping 236
printer configurations 10
printer control panel 14
adjusting brightness 59
factory defaults, restoring 239
printer hard disk
disposing of 218
encrypting 221
installing 31
removing 36
troubleshooting 286
printer hard disk encryption 221
printer information
where to find 9
printer messages
1565 Emulation error, load emulation option 269
31.xx Missing or Defective [color] cartridge 262
32.xx [color] cartridge part number unsupported by device 262
34 Incorrect paper size, open [src] 262
35 Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature 262
37 Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation 263
37 Insufficient memory to collate job 263
37 Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted 263
38 Memory full 263
39 Complex page, some data may not have printed 263
40 [color] invalid refill, change cartridge 263
51 Defective flash detected 263
52 Not enough free space in flash memory for resources 264
54 Network [x] software error 264
54 Serial option [x] error 264
54 Standard network software error 264
55 Unsupported option in slot [x] 264
56 Parallel port [x] disabled 265
56 Serial port [x] disabled 265
56 Standard parallel port disabled 265
56 Standard USB port disabled 265
56 USB port [x] disabled 265
57 Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored 265
58 Input config error 266
58 Too many bins attached 266
58 Too many disks installed 266
58 Too many flash options installed 266
58 Too many trays attached 266
59 Incompatible output bin [x] 267
61 Remove defective disk 267
62 Disk full 267
80.xx Fuser life warning 267
80.xx Fuser missing 267
80.xx Fuser near life warning 267
80.xx Replace fuser 267
82.xx Replace waste toner bottle 268
82.xx Waste toner bottle missing 268
82.xx Waste toner bottle nearly full 268
83.xx Replace transfer module 268
83.xx Transfer module life warning 268
83.xx Transfer module missing 268
840.01 Scanner disabled by admin 269
840.02 Scanner disabled. Contact system administrator if problem persists. 269
88.xx [Color] cartridge critically low 269
88.xx [color] cartridge low 268, 269
88.xx [color] cartridge nearly low 268
Adjusting color 252
an error has occurred with the flash drive 252
an error has occurred with the USB drive 252
Change [input src] to [custom type name] load [orientation] 253
Change [src] to [custom string] 253
Change [src] to [custom string] load [orientation] 253
Change [src] to [custom type name] 253
Change [src] to [size] 254
Change [src] to [size] [type] 254
Change [src] to [size] [type] load [orientation] 254
Change [src] to [size] load [orientation] 254
Check [src] orientation or guides 255
Close [tray] door 255
Close finisher side door 255
Close finisher top cover 255
Close front door 255
Close left side door 255
Close paper transport cover 255
Close top access cover 255
Disk corrupted 255
Disk near full. Securely clearing disk space. 256
Disk problem 256
Empty the hole punch box 256
Fax partition inoperative. Contact system administrator. 256
Fax server 'To Format' not set up. Contact system administrator. 256
Fax Station Name not set up 257
Fax Station Number not set up 257
Insert hole punch box 257
Insert staple cartridge 258
Insert Tray [x] 258
Install bin [x] 257
Install Tray [x] 257
Load [src] with [custom string] 258
Load [src] with [custom type name] 258
Load [src] with [size] 258
Load [src] with [type] [size] 258

Load Manual Feeder with [custom string] 259
Load Manual Feeder with [custom type name] 259
Load Manual Feeder with [size] 259
Load Manual Feeder with [type] [size] 259
Load staples 259
Memory full, cannot print faxes 260
Reattach bin [x] 260
Reattach bin [x] – [y] 260
Remove packaging material, [area name] 261
Remove paper from [linked bin set name] 261
Remove paper from all bins 261
Remove paper from bin [x] 261
Remove paper from standard output bin 261
Restore Held Jobs? 261
Scanner automatic feeder cover open 261
Slide finisher to the left 261
Some held jobs were not restored 256
Supply needed to complete job 261
Tray [x] paper size unsupported 262
Unsupported disk 261
Unsupported USB device, please remove 256
printer options troubleshooting
2,000-sheet drawer problems 285
cannot detect flash memory card 286
cannot detect printer hard disk 286
internal print server 287
Internal Solutions Port 286
memory card 287
option not working 284
paper tray problems 285
USB/parallel interface card 287
printer problems, solving
basic 270
printer software
installing 40
printhead lenses
cleaning 226
printing
black-and-white 86
canceling, from printer control panel 88
directory list 85
font sample list 85
forms 53
from flash drive 84
from Macintosh 79
from Windows 79
menu settings page 40
network setup page 40
on letterhead 79
print quality test pages 86
printing a directory list 85
printing a document 79
printing a font sample list 85
printing a menu settings page 40
printing a network setup page 40
printing confidential and other held jobs
from a Macintosh computer 82
from Windows 82
printing from a flash drive 84
printing in black and white 86
printing on letterhead 79
printing print quality test pages 86
publications
where to find 9

Q

Quality menu 208
Quiet Mode
print quality troubleshooting 291

R

Reattach bin [x] 260
Reattach bin [x] – [y] 260
reattaching the system board cover 20
recycled paper
using 56, 74
recycling
Lexmark packaging 61
Lexmark products 60
toner cartridges 61
WEEE statement 309
reducing a copy 94
reducing printer noise 57
Remove packaging material, [area name] 261
Remove paper from [linked bin set name] 261
Remove paper from all bins 261
Remove paper from bin [x] 261
Remove paper from standard output bin 261
removing printer hard disk 36
repeat print jobs 82
printing from a Macintosh computer 82
printing from Windows 82
repeating print defects 296
replacing a print cartridge 231
replacing the waste toner bottle 234
reports
viewing 238
Reports menu 146
reserve print jobs 82
printing from a Macintosh computer 82
printing from Windows 82
resolution, fax
changing 116
Restore Held Jobs? 261
restoring factory default settings 239

S

safety information 7, 8
saving paper 96
Scan Center features 128
scan to computer
advanced options, setting 130
options 129, 130
original size 129
paper orientation, setting 130
scan troubleshooting
cannot scan from a computer 278
partial document or photo scans 277
scan was not successful 276
scanner unit does not close 274
scanning takes too long or freezes the computer 276
ScanBack Utility
using 128

scanner
Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) 12
functions 11
registration 227
scanner glass 12
Scanner automatic feeder cover open 261
scanner glass
cleaning 223
scanner glass (flatbed)
copying using 91
scanning
from a flash drive 128
to a computer 127
to an FTP address 122
to an FTP, using address book 123
scanning documents at the printer 54
scanning to a computer 127
scanning to a flash drive 128
scanning to an FTP address
creating shortcuts using the computer 123
using shortcut numbers 122
using the address book 123
using the touch screen 122
scanning to computer
document type, setting 129
Security Audit Log menu 163
security lock 13
sending a fax using the touch screen 114
sending fax at a scheduled time 117
separator roll
ordering 230
Serial [x] menu 157
serial printing
setting up 50
Set Date and Time menu 164
setting
TCP/IP address 150
setting the fax number or station number 113
setting the outgoing fax name or station name 113
setting the paper size 62
setting the paper type 62
setting the Universal paper size 62
setting up e-mail alerts using the Embedded Web Server 238
setting up serial printing 50
setting up the printer
on a wired network (Macintosh) 47
on a wired network (Windows) 47
settings, document type
fax 118
Setup menu 204
shadow images appear on prints 291
shipping the printer 236
shortcuts, creating
e-mail 102
fax destination 115
FTP address 124
FTP destination 123
Sleep Mode
adjusting 58
Slide finisher to the left 261
SMTP Setup menu 159
solid color or black pages appear on prints 297
Some held jobs were not restored 256
standard exit bin
lighting, setting 60
Standard Network menu 147
standard tray
loading 63
Standard USB menu 153
staple cartridges
ordering 230
staple jam, clearing
455 staple jam 249
statement of volatility 218
status of supplies
checking 228
storing
paper 76
supplies 228
storing print jobs 82
streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 298
streaks appear on a page 297
subject and message information
adding to e-mail 104
Substitute Size menu 138
supplies
checking status 228
checking, from printer control panel 228
checking, using the Embedded Web Server 228
conserving 56
storing 228
using recycled paper 56
Supplies menu 132
supplies, ordering
ADF pick assembly 230
cleaning kit 231
fuser or transfer module 230
print cartridges 229
separator roll 230
staple cartridges 230
waste toner bottle 230
Supply needed to complete job 261
supported flash drives 83
supported paper sizes 76
supported paper types and weights 78
system board
accessing 20
system board cover
attaching 20
reattaching 20

T

TCP/IP menu 150
telecommunication notices 312, 313, 314, 315
tips
card stock 81
labels, paper 81
on using envelopes 80
on using letterhead 79
on using transparencies 80
tips on using envelopes 80
tips on using letterhead 79
toner cartridges
recycling 61
toner darkness
adjusting 86
touch screen
buttons 16
transparencies
copying on 91
loading 80
loading in multipurpose feeder 68
tips on using 80

using 80
Tray [x] paper size
unsupported 262
tray linking
assigning a custom paper type name 72
tray unlinking
assigning a custom paper type name 72
trays
linking 71
unlinking 71
troubleshooting
A network destination stopped working or is invalid 283
an application error has occurred 282
application icon is missing 282
cannot open Embedded Web Server 304
checking an unresponsive printer 270
checking an unresponsive scanner 276
contacting customer support 305
FAQ about color printing 301
Forms are not available or are not working 281
indicator light is blinking 252
printer cannot scan to selected destination 283
Scan to Network 282, 283
solving basic printer problems 270
troubleshooting, copy
copier does not respond 273
partial document or photo copies 275
poor copy quality 274
poor scanned image quality 277
scanner unit does not close 274
troubleshooting, display
display is blank 270
display shows only diamonds 270
troubleshooting, fax
caller ID is not shown 278
can receive but not send faxes 280
can send but not receive faxes 280
cannot send or receive a fax 278
received fax has poor print quality 281
troubleshooting, paper feed
message remains after jam is cleared 288
troubleshooting, print
error reading USB drive 270
held jobs do not print 271
incorrect characters print 272
incorrect margins 292
jammed pages are not reprinted 288
job prints from wrong tray 272
job prints on wrong paper 272
jobs do not print 270
Large jobs do not collate 273
multiple-language PDF files do not print 270
paper curl 293
paper frequently jams 287
print job takes longer than expected 272
tray linking does not work 272
unexpected page breaks 273
troubleshooting, print quality
black streaks on a page 297
blank pages 289
characters have jagged edges 289
clipped images 290
colors not aligned properly 290
fine horizontal lines 291
gray background on prints 292
isolating print quality problems 288
light colored line, white line, or incorrectly colored line appears on prints 293
poor transparency quality 301
print irregularities 293
print is too dark 294
print is too light 295
repeating print defects 296
shadow images appear on prints 291
skewed print 296
solid color or black pages appear on prints 297
streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 298
streaked vertical lines 298
toner fog or background shading 299
toner rubs off 300
toner specks 300
uneven print density 301
white streaks on a page 297
troubleshooting, printer options
2,000-sheet drawer problems 285
cannot detect flash memory card 286
cannot detect printer hard disk 286
internal print server 287
Internal Solutions Port 286
memory card 287
option not working 284
paper tray problems 285
USB/parallel interface card 287
troubleshooting, scan
cannot scan from a computer 278
partial document or photo scans 277
scan was not successful 276
scanner unit does not close 274
scanning takes too long or freezes the computer 276

U

understanding the home screen buttons 15
uneven print density 301
unexpected page breaks 273
Universal Paper Size 144
setting 62
Universal Setup menu 144
unlinking trays 71
Unsupported USB device, please remove 256
updating options in printer driver 41
USB port 38
USB/parallel interface card troubleshooting 287
using Eco-Mode 57
using Forms and Favorites 53
using Hibernate Mode 59
using Quiet Mode 57
using recycled paper 56
using the address book 103

using the Embedded Web
Server 237
using the ScanBack Utility 128
Utilities menu 211

V

verify print jobs 82
  printing from a Macintosh
    computer 82
  printing from Windows 82
viewing
  reports 238
viewing a fax log 117
virtual display
  checking, using Embedded Web
    Server 238
volatile memory 218
  erasing 219
volatility
  statement of 218

W

waste toner bottle
  ordering 230
  replacing 234
wiping the hard disk 219
wired network setup
  using Macintosh 47
  using Windows 47
Wireless menu 152
wireless network
  configuration information 41
  installation, using Macintosh 44
  installation, using Windows 42
wireless network setup
  in Windows 42
wireless printer setup
  in Macintosh 44

X

XPS menu 216